

UC-NRLF



#B 103 772

CASEIN

ITS PREPARATION AND  
TECHNICAL UTILISATION

ROBERT SCHERER

LIBRARY  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

*Class*









CASEIN  
ITS PREPARATION AND TECHNICAL  
UTILISATION



# CASEIN

## *Its Preparation and Technical Utilisation*

BY

ROBERT SCHERER

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN BY

CHAS. SALTER

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS



LONDON

SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON

19 LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

---

NEW YORK

D. VAN NOSTRAND CO.

1906

[The sole right of translation into English rests with Scott, Greenwood & Son.]



TP986  
C25

GENERAL

## PREFACE.

FOR many years the sole use of milk curd was as a foodstuff, and it is only through the scientific researches of the past few decades into the albuminoid substances that attempts have been to utilise this body technically.

It is therefore easy to understand that our knowledge of this important product should be still somewhat imperfect, especially as regards its manifold applications : communications on the subject in the technical press are rare, and it consequently seemed desirable to the author to prepare a work dealing with this material. The first part treats of the preparation of curd from milk—in all cases by the decomposition of the suspended casein compound by the aid of acids or a ferment,—and its purification and drying. Following this, will be described the application of the casein paints and painting, the production of putties, plastic masses, etc., and finally its uses in modern nutrient preparations.

The author is emboldened to hope that the present work will fill a perceptible gap in technical literature, and that it will meet with a friendly reception.

THE AUTHOR.

1905.



# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	v
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xiii

## CHAPTER I.

CASEIN : ITS ORIGIN, PREPARATION AND PROPERTIES . . . . .	1
The Preparation of Casein . . . . .	2
Purifying the Curd . . . . .	17

## CHAPTER II.

VARIOUS METHODS OF PREPARING CASEIN . . . . .	19
---	----

## CHAPTER III.

COMPOSITION AND PROPERTIES OF CASEIN . . . . .	28
--	----

## CHAPTER IV.

CASEIN PAINTS . . . . .	35
"Marble Lime" Colour for Outside Work . . . . .	39
Casein Paint According to an Older Method . . . . .	42
Casein Enamel Paint . . . . .	43
Casein Façade Paint . . . . .	43
Cold-Water Paint in Powder Form . . . . .	44
Kistory's Recipe for Casein Paint and Varnish . . . . .	45
Pure Casein Paints for Walls, etc. . . . .	45
Casein Paints for Woodwork and Iron . . . . .	46
Casein-Silicate Paints . . . . .	47
Milk Paints . . . . .	48
Casein-Silicate Paint Recipes . . . . .	49

	PAGE
Trojel's Boiled Oil Substitute . . . . .	50
Calsomine Wash . . . . .	50
Quick-Drying Casein Paint . . . . .	51
Boiled Oil Substitute . . . . .	52
Ring's Cold-Water Paint . . . . .	52
Formolactin . . . . .	52
Waterproof Paint for Playing Cards . . . . .	54
Casein Colour Lake . . . . .	55
Paint for Marking Bags, Iron Barrels, Cases, etc. . . . .	55
Casein-Cement Paint . . . . .	56

## CHAPTER V.

THE TECHNICS OF CASEIN PAINTING . . . . .	58
Compounding the Binding Medium . . . . .	62
The Preparation and Application of Casein Paints . . . . .	64

## CHAPTER VI.

CASEIN ADHESIVES AND PUTTIES . . . . .	71
Casein Glue in Plates or Flakes . . . . .	73
Bolder's Liquid Casein Glue . . . . .	73
Crosspietsch's Adhesive . . . . .	74
Jeromin's Casein Adhesive . . . . .	74
Hall's Casein Glue . . . . .	76
Waterproof Glue . . . . .	76
Liquid Casein Glue . . . . .	77
Powdered Casein Glue . . . . .	77
Casein and Borax Glue . . . . .	78
Solid Casein Adhesive . . . . .	78
Casein Glue for Cardboard Boxes . . . . .	79
Casein Solution . . . . .	79
Renken's Method of Using Glue . . . . .	80
Glue Powder . . . . .	80
Casein Glue for Match-Making . . . . .	80
Lehner's Casein Putties . . . . .	80
Washable Cement for Deal Boards . . . . .	83
Wenk's Casein Cement . . . . .	83

	PAGE
Casein and Lime Cement . . . . .	84
"Pitch Barm" . . . . .	84
Casein Stopping . . . . .	84
Casein Cement for Stone . . . . .	85

## CHAPTER VII.

THE PREPARATION OF PLASTIC MASSES FROM CASEIN . . . . .	86
Imitation Ivory . . . . .	87
Lilienthal's Plastic Mass . . . . .	88
Jung, Brecher & Kittel's Insulating Preparation . . . . .	88
Anti-Radiation and Anti-Corrosive Composition . . . . .	89
Dickmann's Covering for Floors and Walls . . . . .	89
Imitation Linoleum . . . . .	90
Imitation Leather . . . . .	90
Imitation Bone . . . . .	90
Plastic Mass of Keratin and Casein . . . . .	91
Insulating Mass . . . . .	91
Plastic Casein Masses . . . . .	91
Horny Casein Mass . . . . .	92
Plastic Mass from Celluloid . . . . .	93
Casein-Cellulose Composition . . . . .	94
Fireproof Cellulose Substitute . . . . .	94
Nitrocellulose and Casein Composition . . . . .	95
Franquet's Celluloid Substitute . . . . .	96
Galalith . . . . .	97

## CHAPTER VIII.

USES OF CASEIN IN THE TEXTILE INDUSTRY, FOR FINISHING	
COLOUR PRINTING, ETC. . . . .	105
Caseogum . . . . .	106
"Glutin" . . . . .	106
Casein Dressing for Linen and Cotton Fabrics . . . . .	107
Argentine . . . . .	108
Printing Colour with Metallic Lustre . . . . .	109
Process for Softening, Sizing and Loading Textile Fibres, and for Treating Yarns and Fabrics . . . . .	109



	PAGE
Fixing Casein and other Albuminoids on the Fibre, more particularly in Dyeing . . . . .	110
Fixing Insoluble Colouring Matters . . . . .	110
Waterproofing and Softening Dressing . . . . .	111
Casein for Mercerised Crêpe . . . . .	112
Fixing Zinc White on Cotton with Formaldehyde . . . . .	112
Casein-Magnesia . . . . .	113
Casein Medium for Calico Printing . . . . .	113
Chevallott's Waterproofing Process . . . . .	113
Loading Silk . . . . .	114

## CHAPTER IX.

CASEIN FOODSTUFFS . . . . .	115
Casein Food . . . . .	120
Synthetic Milk . . . . .	120
Milk Food . . . . .	120
Emulsifiable Casein . . . . .	120
Casein Phosphate for Baking . . . . .	121
Bernstein's Baking Preparation . . . . .	121
Making Bread, Low in Carbohydrates, from Flour and Curd . . . . .	121
Higgins's Casein Food . . . . .	122
Preparing Soluble Casein Compounds with Citrates . . . . .	122
Casein Food . . . . .	122
Sell's Curd "Zwieback" Rolls . . . . .	122

## CHAPTER X.

SUNDRY APPLICATIONS OF CASEIN . . . . .	123
Uses of Casein in the Paper Industry . . . . .	123
Metachromotype Paper . . . . .	124
Sizing Paper with Casein . . . . .	124
Waterproofing Paper . . . . .	125
Casein Solution for Coating Paper . . . . .	126
Horn's Clear Solution of Casein . . . . .	126
Water- and Fire-proof Asbestos Paper and Board . . . . .	127
Paper Flasks, etc., for Oils and Fats . . . . .	129
Washable Drawing and Writing Paper . . . . .	130

# CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
Paper Wrapping for Food, Clothing, etc. . . . .	131
Paint Remover . . . . .	133
Beuse's Shoe Polish . . . . .	133
Casein Photographic Plates . . . . .	134
Wood-Cement Roofing Pulp . . . . .	134
Cask Glaze of Casein and Formaldehyde . . . . .	135
The Preparation of Artists' Canvas . . . . .	137
Solidifying Mineral Oil . . . . .	141
Uses of Casein in Photography . . . . .	141
Casein Ointment . . . . .	148
Clarifying Glue with Casein . . . . .	148
Casein in Soapmaking . . . . .	148
Casein-Albumose Soap . . . . .	150
Casein in Sheets, Blocks, etc. . . . .	150
Eberhardt & Mierisch's Soluble Casein . . . . .	150
Waterproof Casein . . . . .	151

## CHAPTER XI.

CASEIN COMPOUNDS . . . . .	152
INDEX . . . . .	157





## INTRODUCTION.

ALTHOUGH casein, in the form of cheese, has from time immemorial played an important part in the dietary of the human race, and has been produced in very large quantities, its technical utilisation was almost entirely neglected. Its properties of dissolving in alkaline liquids and forming, in this condition, a good mucilage have long been known; but this was all, and it is only within the last few years that any extensive technical application of casein has occurred.

Casein is used as a paint, as a dressing for textiles, a cement and mucilage, in the production of plastic masses, for sizing paper, and various other purposes. Since close attention has been bestowed on the insolubilising action of formaldehyde on casein, a whole series of new uses has been discovered for the article, which is undoubtedly destined to play a very important part in technology. Furthermore, its original application as a foodstuff has not been lost sight of; its high nutritive value to man and its assimilability have led to the preparation of a number of artificial foods which are now extensively

consumed. Also, in cases where, owing to lack of means of communication, milk cannot be sent to large centres of population for consumption, it is now converted into butter and casein, the latter being disposed of for technical purposes.

In America considerable importance is attached to the manufacture and treatment of casein. The Casein Company of America, which enjoyed a monopoly of the manufacture and sale of casein and its products in the United States, has now to face the energetic competition of the wealthy Union Casein Company, which is said to have made buying contracts with large dairies for several years ahead. A capable chemist, with a wide knowledge of the patent literature of the subject, has been engaged. The Casein Company of America has taken out a large number of patents, covering nearly the whole ground, from the precipitation of the casein from milk to the production of mechanical mixtures of casein, and utilises these patents as a means of bringing pressure to bear on small dairies. Casein already forms an important article of commerce in America, especially in papermaking, the manufacture of sized papers, painting the ends of sugar barrels, and so forth; but for these purposes production on a large scale is indispensable. Owing to the highly diversified uses of casein, those of a technical character being naturally the first to be considered, it seems desirable to divide the present work into a series of chapters, each complete in itself, as follows:—

The preparation and properties of casein ; followed  
by its application :—

As a painting material ;

As mucilage and cement ;

In the preparation of plastic masses, as a substitute for horn, ivory, celluloid, etc., with special attention to “Galalith” ;

As a dressing and colour-fixing medium in the textile industry ;

As a foodstuff ; and for various purposes that cannot be grouped in the foregoing classification.

Finally, a summary will be given of most of the known compounds of casein with chemical elements, their salts, etc., and organic compounds which may become useful in time to come. Wherever possible, the scattered literature of the subject has been drawn upon and included.







## CHAPTER I.

### CASEIN : ITS ORIGIN, PREPARATION AND PROPERTIES.

THE milk of mammiferous animals, from which casein is derived, is a normal secretion of the healthy lacteal glands of the female animal. After the flow of colostrum (the first milk secretion after parturition) has ceased, normal milk is produced for a longer or shorter time, known as the period of lactation. As a general thing the milk of mammals is an opaque, whitish or faintly yellow liquid, exhibiting a peculiar specific taste and smell. It chiefly consists of water, fat, casein, albumin, milk sugar and inorganic constituents, the most important being the fat and casein. Cows' milk is the chief variety, and consists, according to Kirchner, of :—

	Mean.	Limits.
Fat . . .	3·4 per cent.	0·8 to 8·0 per cent.
Casein . . .	3·2 „	2·0 „ 4·5 „
Albumin . . .	0·6 „	0·2 „ 0·8 „
Lactoprotein . . .	0·1 „	0·08 „ 0·35 „
Milk sugar . . .	4·5 „	0·3 „ 6·0 „
Ash . . .	0·7 „	0·6 „ 0·9 „

Milk must be regarded as an emulsion, *i.e.*, a liquid containing other substances in suspension in a very finely divided state, and we must assume that the fat globules—the future butter—for instance, are surrounded by liquid envelopes. The liquid fat globules attract substances dissolved in the milk and condense the same around themselves, so that we must consider every fat globule as surrounded by an envelope richer in dissolved substances than the milk itself.

## THE PREPARATION OF CASEIN.

When fresh, whole milk is left at rest, or is set in very rapid rotary motion by means of special appliances (centrifugal machines), the cream, or portion richest in fat, collects on the surface, and if this be skimmed off skim milk is left. This latter forms the raw material for the preparation of the second chief product of milk, namely, the casein, which is present to the extent of 2 to 4·5 per cent., the average being 3·2 per cent. Casein is not dissolved in milk, but is suspended in a state of distension, as can be proved by a simple experiment. If milk be filtered through a porous earthenware plate the filtrate obtained consists merely of a solution of milk sugar and saline constituents, the fat and casein, neither of which is in solution, being left behind on the surface of the filter.

The entire behaviour of milk is determined by this peculiar condition of the casein present. This is the cause of certain physical properties of the milk, notably the viscosity, which in turn influences the rate at which the cream rises. The condition of the casein is not altered by warming or boiling the milk; but, on the other hand, it is precipitated by dilute acids or rennet. The precipitated casein is insoluble in water or dilute acids, and forms when dried a crumbling, horny mass; but it is dissolved by alkalis and concentrated acids. This behaviour of casein forces one to the conclusion that it does not exist in a pure state in milk; and, in fact, experiments have shown that it occurs therein as a compound of lime. This circumstance explains its behaviour towards dilute acids, *i.e.*, its precipitation thereby, the lime being extracted by the reagent and the casein left in the solid form. Only a very small quantity of acid is needed to effect this precipitation, 1 per cent. of lactic acid (from the milk sugar) being sufficient to

curdle the milk. In addition to casein, small quantities of albumin (0.6 per cent.), lactoglobulin (traces) and lactoprotein are also present. Owing to the force of circumstances it is seldom that casein products are prepared in the same place as the crude casein is produced, the raw material being generally obtained from dairies at a distance. For this reason the description of the mode of preparing the crude casein will be confined to the indispensable minimum.

Casein is recovered from skim milk (whole milk containing too much valuable butter to be used for the purpose) by throwing down the suspended substance with suitable reagents. These may be of two kinds. On the one hand, as already mentioned, acids, including the lactic acid formed as a fermentation product of the milk sugar, will curdle the milk and thus precipitate the casein ; and, on the other, the same result can be brought about by the use of certain ferments, of which the rennet ferment, *lab*, is the chief. At one time it was thought the product was the same in both cases, but careful experiment has shown that a considerable difference exists between them, pure casein being obtained when acids are used, whereas rennet furnishes the so-called paracasein, a fission product of the ordinary substance. Hence it is necessary to keep the two reagents distinct, this being a point of special importance when cheese-making is in question.

In order to secure the correct precipitation of the casein the milk must be kept at a certain temperature, not exceeding 140° F. or lower than 68° F., since beyond these limits the action of the rennet is weakened and very imperfect. The milk may be warmed either by direct fire heat or by steam, a jacketed pan being used in the latter case.

We will leave out of consideration the primitive pans, suspended over a wood fire, and refer only to the form shown in Fig. 1, which represents a pan surrounded by brickwork

(a) with an annular flue (b) between the pan and the brick-work. To the right of the pan is mounted another, for heating the water, and a portable grate runs along a track (h), so as to be rolled under one or the other pan as desired.

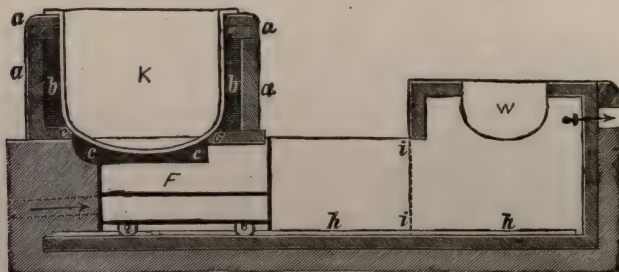


FIG. 1.—Heating Pan for the Preparation of Casein.  
(K = Milk Pan. W = Water Pan. F = Portable Grate.)

When used for heating the water pan, a door at (i), fitted with a damper, is closed. This arrangement offers numerous advantages, the height to which the flame is admitted in the flue, for instance, being controlled by a damper, whilst the

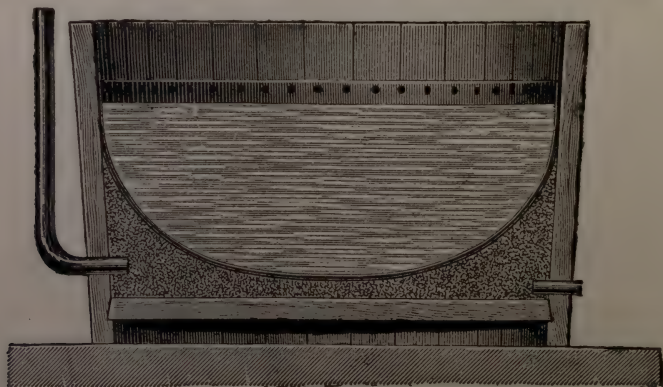


FIG. 2.—Steam Pan for Casein.

surrounding brick setting enables the milk to retain the heat better than if merely suspended over an open fire. Finally, the fuel is more fully utilised, since none is uselessly consumed, but is employed for heating water.



Steam, or even hot water, can also be used for heating the pans, and a steam pan of this character is illustrated in Fig. 2. The advantage in this case is that the heating surface exposed to the steam is very large and therefore utilises the heat fully. A very useful form of pan is the “duplicator” (Fig. 3), made by A. Pfanhauer of Vienna, for casein, jam boiling and for evaporating or cooling milk, etc. It consists of two copper pans (of one-eighth to one-twelfth inch sheet copper), mounted in an iron frame, so that the whole can be tilted. The trunnions are hollow, to admit steam on the one side and cold water on the other, branches from the trunnions

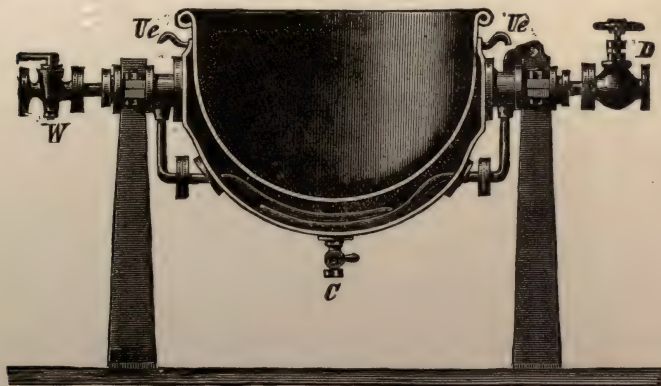


FIG. 3.—“Duplicator” Pan for Casein.

entering the jacket space and terminating in perforated pipes to ensure more perfect distribution of heat. D represents the steam valve, W the water tap, and C the discharge tap. The cold water runs away through the overflow, Ue.

No special boiler is needed for generating the necessary steam, no high steam pressure being required. A very convenient steam generator for this purpose is supplied by Pfanhauer (Fig. 4). Where water can be drawn from the mains, the boiler is filled through the pipe (oo), but in other cases a tundish must be used. The steam leaves through the pipe (b), which can be fitted with several branch cocks, as shown

in the figure, leading to the different utensils. The pipe (*c*), which extends to within four inches of the bottom of the boiler, serves a dual purpose. In the first place, it acts as a safety valve, the water being forced out if the internal pressure becomes excessive owing to obstructions in the outlet pipes. Secondly, if the boiler is not kept properly filled, steam will escape through this pipe as soon as the water

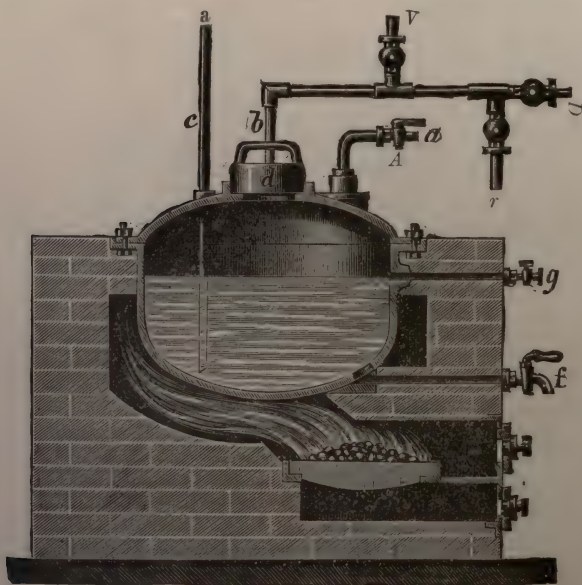


FIG. 4.—Steam Generator.

(*V* = Casein Pan and Preliminary Heater. *A* = Steampipe. *E* = Washer. *D* = Fodder Steamer.)

level sinks below the mouth, an indication being thus given that the water is low. The piece marked (*d*) is a ground block of iron, fitting into a large opening, through which the boiler is cleaned out. It also acts as a safety valve in the event of the pipe (*c*) getting choked. Hot water can be drawn from the boiler through the tap (*f*), which may also be used for the introduction of flushing water when the

boiler is being cleaned. The pipe (*g*) is employed as an overflow in filling the boiler, to prevent over-filling and indicate when enough water has been run in.

When the milk to be curdled has been raised to the proper temperature in one of the utensils just described, it is treated with the rennet. At first no change is apparent, but after some little time the milk begins to curdle, having thickened just before, and the precipitation of the casein is soon complete. At a temperature of 95° F., one part of good rennet is sufficient to curdle 10,000 parts of milk within forty minutes, whilst two parts will effect the same result in half the time, or curdle double the quantity in the same time. For a given temperature and a definite quantity of milk, the time required for coagulation varies inversely with the amount of rennet used.

Rennet which has been used once loses its power almost entirely, it being difficult to curdle a fresh batch of milk with the whey from the previous one. From this it follows that the curdling of milk by rennet must be regarded as a very protracted chemical process, which does not become apparent until it has proceeded to a certain stage. The stronger the action of the rennet, and the sooner the casein is thrown down, the more powerful the contraction of the curd and the larger the volume of whey expressed. This means a reduction in the residual water in the curd and an increase in its final dryness and firmness. Hence the manner in which the rennet acts is of considerable importance to the character of the casein.

This latter is also influenced by the quantity of rennet used, the temperature at which it is allowed to act, and finally by the character of the milk, or rather the casein therein. The character of the casein reacts on the influence of the rennet, and the same applies to the reaction of the milk, an acid reaction favouring the working of the rennet,

whilst an alkaline reaction hinders it. In the case of normal milk, which has an amphoteric reaction, the action is intermediate between these two extremes. The increased action in the case of sour milk is explained by the presence of a larger quantity of soluble salts of lime, which are essential to the action of the rennet. With an alkaline reaction the proportion of these salts is lower, and consequently the rennet is less efficacious. Cases have been known in which the imperfect action of rennet—resulting in the milk refusing to curdle at all—has been traced entirely to the poverty of the milk in soluble lime salts. Old milk, again, takes longer to curdle than when fresh; and the percentage of water present also plays a part. Milk that has been boiled, or heated to  $167^{\circ}$  C., is more difficult to curdle, and will not do so at all in some cases owing to the alteration effected in the lime salts by heat.

Lactalbumin and lactoglobulin are coagulated by boiling, in the same way as albumin and globulin. Casein, on the other hand, forms a skin on the surface of the milk, and does not coagulate below  $266^{\circ}$  F. in a closed vessel. The formation of the skin is prevented by stirring, or by heating the milk in an enclosed space or one saturated with steam.

As already mentioned, the decomposition of milk can be effected by other substances, particularly acids and acid salts; though these are rarely used, since the chief use of casein, in the form of cheese, is as a foodstuff.

The coagulation of milk furnishes two chief products: the curd, containing a larger or smaller proportion of fat, proteids and lactic acid; and the whey, containing the soluble salts of the milk, together with curd, lactic acid, milk sugar, etc. Strictly speaking, the whey can be differentiated into cheese-milk and whey, the former term being applied to the liquid remaining after the separation of the curd, whilst whey, in the narrower sense, is the residue left



after the removal of the whey-butter and whey-cheese. The whey proper is used as a beverage, in baking, for feeding pigs, and also for the recovery of milk-sugar (for alcohol or vinegar), and the preparation of fermented liquors, such as whey-champagne and whey-punch. The two classes of whey are accredited by Fleischmann with the following composition:—

	Cheese-milk.	Whey.
Water . . . . .	93·15	93·31
Fat . . . . .	0·35	0·10
Proteids . . . . .	1·00	0·27
Milk sugar and lactic acid . . . . .	4·90	5·05
Ash . . . . .	0·60	0·47

The casein separated from milk is termed “curd,” and is subjected to further treatment, mainly with a view to reducing its water content when cheesemaking is in question. If, on the other hand, it is to be used for technical purposes, it must be thoroughly freed from the residual whey by repeated washings with hot or cold water, and finally more or less thoroughly pressed (according to the purpose in view) to expel the water.

The spontaneous and artificial coagulation of milk has been dealt with by Prof. Pokorny (*Chemiker Zeitung*) as follows. It is known that milk left to stand curdles and turns sour spontaneously, as the result of the formation of acid. This cause is demonstrated by the fact that fresh milk can be curdled by the addition of lactic or some other acid, the same result being produced by acid salts. Fresh milk treated with acetic acid is coagulated almost instantaneously when the amount of acid used is large, though with small quantities of acid some little time elapses before the flakes of casein can be observed adhering to the walls of the test glass on shaking. Sulphuric acid, as a strong mineral acid, coagulates milk at once when added in the proportion of 5 per cent. (*e.g.*, 10 cc. of 10 per cent. sulphuric acid to 20 cc. of milk).

The first treatment of the curd in cheesemaking is designed to remove the enclosed whey, the curd being vigorously stirred or broken by hand (with a curd breaker or similar instrument). Curd mills are also used, consisting principally of a grid or lattice of galvanised iron rods, between which rotates a shaft armed with teeth. When the shaft is turned by means of the handle, the curd introduced through a feed hopper is pressed between the rods by the teeth, and thoroughly broken up or squeezed. The broken curd is then stirred to a uniform pulp with a little water in a large vat, and passed through a sieve or mill, after which sufficient water is added to form a milky liquid. This is left for the curd to settle down, and sieved to drain off the liquid; or in large dairies is put through a centrifugal separator.

All centrifugal machines are driven by steam or electricity, by means of intermediate gearing, or else by special driving mechanism, and have to be run at high speed, which in turn entails solidity of construction. For reasons of safety, therefore, the regulation issued by the German Chemical Trades Accident Insurance Association, to the effect that the maximum permissible load and rate of speed should be conspicuously posted on each centrifugal machine, and machines of this kind driven by attached motors should be provided with a speed indicator marked with the maximum permitted speed, is perfectly justified. These machines are either driven from overhead, through a second motion mounted on uprights forming part of the machine, or else from below, the motion being transmitted to the vertical shaft, this latter method being now almost exclusively employed. Though both systems entail good construction and very careful supervision in working, this is particularly the case with overhead driving. They also require very strong foundations, the contents of the drum are very liable to contamination by the lubricating oil, and the accessibility of the drum is greatly reduced by

the main shaft passing through it. On the other hand, the machines take up less room than those driven from underneath. A typical centrifugal machine with bottom driving is that of Haubold (Chemnitz), shown in Fig. 5, for which the maker claims the following points of superiority : (1) Perfectly even and noiseless running, combined with low cost of up-keep ; (2) absence of any masonry foundation, which is replaced by a strong wooden frame, enabling the machine to be set up in any convenient place, even in upper

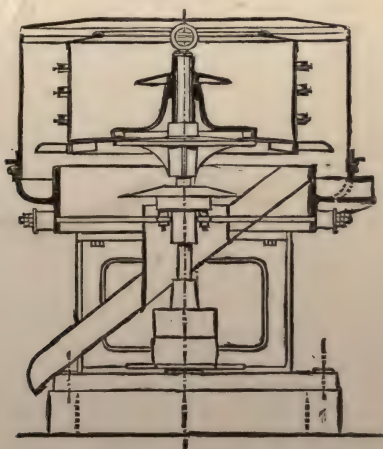


FIG. 5.—Section of Haubold's Patent Centrifugal Machine with Bottom Discharge.

storeys ; (3) small consumption of motive power, drum perfectly clear inside ; (4) driving mechanism situated under the drum, preventing any contamination of the contents by dropping oil ; (5) careful and solid construction of the various parts, with minimum wear and tear ; (6) high speed combined with perfect safety.

The drums are constructed and arranged in such a manner that the contents are expelled with perfect regularity. They are usually made of sheet copper, though for special purposes use is made of steel, wrought or cast iron, alumin-

ium, brass, bronze, nickel-plate or porcelain, or coated with vulcanite or enamel, as well as tinned, lead-lined, galvanised or silver-plated. A vulcanite lining is recommended for all materials which should not be brought into contact with metal, or where the metal used cannot properly resist the action of acids, etc. For these purposes vulcanite is superior to porcelain or earthenware linings on account of its lightness, so that the machine can be run at the highest speed permissible for centrifugal separators, whereas with earthenware the heavy weight necessitates low rates of speed. The same applies to lead-lined drums, in which, owing to technical difficulties, a uniform lining cannot be secured with sheet metal less than about one-eighth inch thick, thus making the drum so heavy that it cannot be run without danger at the ordinary speed.

The washing and draining of the curd is repeated several times, until the washings run away clear, the curd being finally drained in the separator and pressed, if necessary, to bring it to the proper state of dryness. In this form it can be sent out for various uses, in which the presence of the residual moisture does no harm ; or else it is thoroughly dried for conversion into powder.

The drained curd may be dried on trays in heated drying-rooms, fitted with ventilating appliances to facilitate the removal of the moisture, or else is treated in special forms of apparatus, a few of which will now be described. The first of these is the drying cylinder, warmed from inside or outside, or both, and rotated to keep the contents in constant motion. The cylinder may be provided with a shaft carrying paddles or similar devices and rotating in the fixed cylinder or left stationary while the cylinder revolves ; or the two may move in the same or opposite directions. The best type of drying cylinder is one containing no moving internal parts, since these parts are liable to become obstructed, and even



broken, by the material under treatment when in large lumps ; and they also break the material down too small in some cases. The rotary movement of the cylinder or of the shaft not only stirs up the material, and thus greatly accelerates drying by presenting fresh surfaces for evaporation, but also gradually moves the material onward in the cylinder. The operation, therefore, proceeds continuously, in the same way as in a drying flue, though more rapidly on account of the constant stirring, and yields a product of perfectly uniform dryness throughout. The onward movement of the material is effected in various ways, either by means of a rotating shaft (inside the cylinder) fitted with spirally mounted arms, and therefore acting like a worm conveyor, or else by mounting the drum with one end higher than the other. The latter effect may be also obtained by the use of a conical casing, the shaft being mounted horizontally, though the cylindrical form, with the shaft tilted at an angle with the horizontal, is preferable, on account of lower cost and greater ease of manufacture. In this system the central shaft and arms are unnecessary, the drum being actuated by a toothed crown round the outer edge, driven by worm or cog gearing. Worm gearing is preferable, being more easily fitted and giving the requisite slow movement without any troublesome reducing gear when the shafting is run at the ordinary speed. In view of the small power needed to drive the cylinder, no objection on the score of useful effect applies to the use of worm gearing.

The interior of the cylinder must be fitted with blades, which lift up the material under treatment and allow it to fall down again slowly and in small quantities, so that each particle is repeatedly exposed to the surrounding warm air. At the same time, the material is always lifted perpendicular to the axis of the drum and falls vertically, thus describing a spiral line, the pitch of which depends on the slope of the

drum axis toward the horizontal. Each revolution of the drum, therefore, moves every particle of the contents spirally onward, the rate of advance being regulated by two factors—the speed of the drum and the axial slope. If the latter be nil, the pitch of the aforesaid spiral will be also nil, and the material will be turned over but not moved forward; and in proportion as the axial slope is increased or diminished, so also will the material in the drum move faster or slower. Since the same drum is used for drying different materials at different times, or for treating the same material containing different percentages of moisture, it is advisable to make

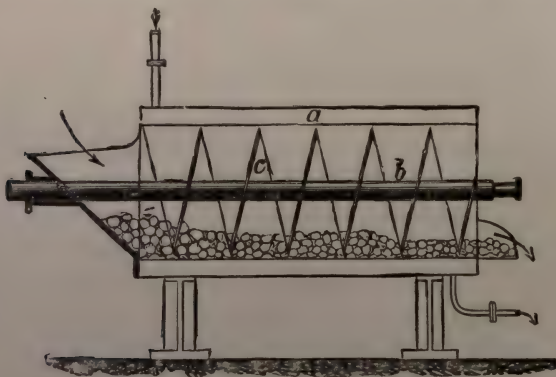


FIG. 6.—Rotary Drying Cylinder.

provision for working in a corresponding manner, which can be most easily done by making the axial slope adjustable. In this manner the onward movement of the material can be accelerated or retarded as required, and the drying process carried on in a uniform manner at the smallest expense. A few instances of typical drying cylinders will now be given, the details of which can be modified according to requirements.

Fig. 6 represents a horizontal drum (a) fitted with a shaft (b), the arms (c) of which move the material onward. The cylinder is of the fixed type, and is jacketed for steam heat-

ing. The liberated moisture escapes through the discharge outlet.

The Passburg drying apparatus (Fig. 7) is fitted internally

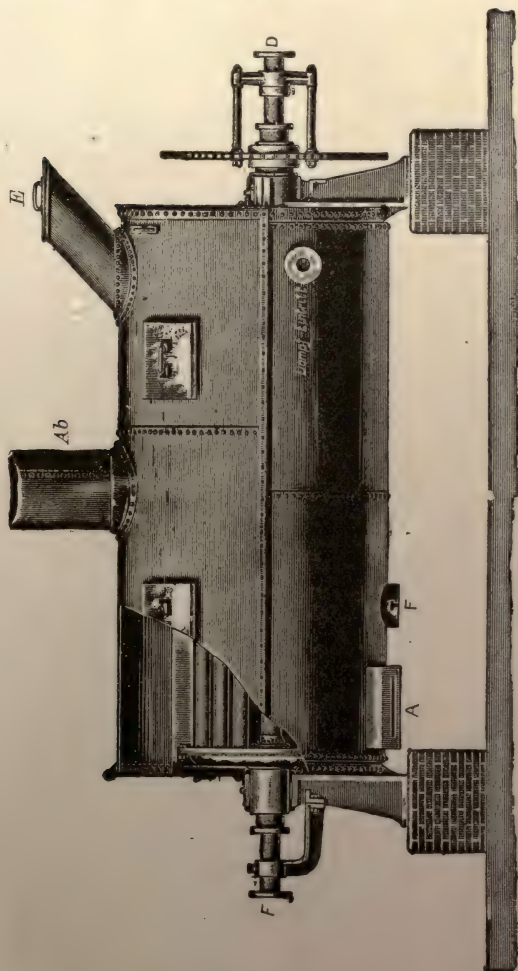


FIG. 7.—Passburg's Rotary Drier.

(*Ab* = Vapour Exhaust. *E* = Feed Pipe. *D* = Steam Admission. *F* = Waste Steam Outlet.  
*A* = Discharge Orifice.)

with a rotary system of tubes, which also serves to mix, advance and dry the contents of the drum. The heating efficiency of this apparatus is high and results in high drying capacity. It may be heated by either live or exhaust steam.

These rotary driers are suitable where cheap plant is the prime consideration, rather than the drying of large quantities of material at a low temperature.

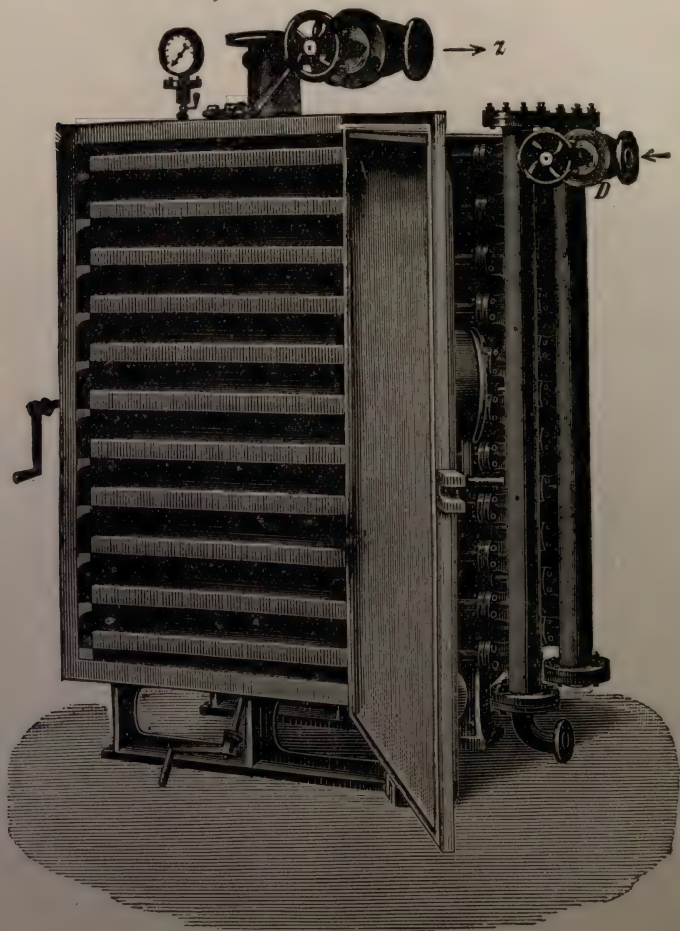


FIG. 8.—Passburg's Vacuum Drying Plant.  
(Z = Airpump. D = Steam inlet.)

The Passburg vacuum drier (Fig. 8) consists of a cast or wrought-iron case, which can be hermetically closed by doors at one or both ends. The inside is divided into a number of



superimposed steam or hot-water boxes, fitted with proper connections for admitting and discharging the heating fluid, and constructed to stand a working pressure of 5 atmospheres. These boxes support the trays holding the material to be dried. When the rubber-shod doors have been closed, a vacuum of 720 mm. mercury gauge is produced in the case by means of an airpump, the boxes being meanwhile traversed by the steam or other heating fluid employed. In consequence of the vacuum the water in the material to be dried is vaporised readily at a comparatively moderate temperature (about 104° F.), so that drying is soon effected. In fact, the apparatus will dry in a few hours, and without the slightest risk of overheating, materials which are difficult to dry and take several days when treated by other processes, even if they can be dried at all. The apparatus is easily and conveniently fed, and does its work in a clean and efficient manner. The temperature is regulated by simply setting the steampipe valve. When warm water is used for heating and an efficient vacuum is obtained by means of a vacuum pump, the water can be vaporised at 68° F. A more complete description of drying plant is given by Weigand in his work on this subject.

#### PURIFYING THE CURD.

One hundred parts by weight of well-pressed curd are stirred to a pulp with 50 parts of water, and this is treated, in order to remove lactic acid and butter fat, by steaming for twenty-five to thirty minutes in a wooden vat containing about 150 parts of a 1 per cent. solution of soda.

The vat must be fairly large, on account of the frothing that occurs. After heating, the mass forms a thin milky liquid, which is transferred to a separate vessel to cool, and is then treated with dilute nitric acid until a small sample no longer exhibits traces of a precipitate. As a rule  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  per cent.

of 40 per cent. nitric acid, mixed with 4 parts by weight of water, will be sufficient. The casein separates out from the milky liquid on standing and falls to the bottom. The supernatant fluid is run off, the casein rinsed with fresh water, left to settle, the water decanted, and the washing repeated till the effluent water is perfectly neutral.

To make the casein as dry as possible it is laid on filter cloths to drain and afterwards pressed, preferably in a filter press, this operation being followed by drying on trays in drying chambers at a temperature of 120° to 140° F. The finished product can either be worked up at once or stored in a dry place for use later on. The small residual quantity of butter fat in the casein could be entirely removed by digestion with benzol or with an ether-alcohol mixture, but owing to the troublesome nature of the process it is seldom practised. One hundred parts of curd furnish 45 parts of purified casein, free from lactic acid and butter fat. The material can be immediately converted into a good glue by mixing it with 25 per cent. of distilled water and 1 to 4 per cent. of bicarbonate of soda in a mechanical stirring apparatus working at fifteen to twenty revolutions per minute. Afterwards another 25 per cent. of distilled water is added to complete the solution, and the whole is left to stand for five to six hours. At the end of that time the glue will be pliant and fit for use. An antiseptic is added to prevent mould.

## CHAPTER II.

### VARIOUS METHODS OF PREPARING CASEIN.

IN order to obtain white casein, free from the yellow tinge attaching to that prepared with sulphuric acid, several different acids are used in succession as precipitants, a method which also has the advantage of cheapness. The best plan is to first throw down the casein as curd, with sulphuric acid, then dissolve this curd in alkali, and reprecipitate with acetic acid. According to the German patent specification of R. Hatmaker (dated May, 1901), about one and a half parts by volume of sulphuric acid (density 66° B.), diluted with seven of water, are sufficient to precipitate the curd from 1,000 parts of milk. If the operation is performed at a temperature of 100° to 120° F. the curd will come down as large and solid lumps, which must then be thoroughly washed with cold water. The curd from the above quantity of milk can be dissolved in 350 parts of a 5 per cent. solution of bicarbonate of soda, the process being accelerated by warming the whole to 100° F. Acetic acid of about 29 per cent. strength is used, and is added slowly till all the casein has been thrown down and the separated aqueous liquid is perfectly clear. After this liquid has been drawn off the casein is thoroughly washed with cold water.

A. Hall recommends that the milk should be curdled with hydrochloric acid, the resulting casein being heated to such a degree that the contained acid volatilises. A current of air is also passed through the mass.

According to A. Spitteler, the alkali used in preparing the casein should be replaced by an alkali carbonate, when a colourless, tough casein is desired. In this case the reaction proceeds more gradually. Should a transparent product be desired, the separated substance should not be removed from the solution until the latter begins to be transparent.

K. Ruprecht states that the following method is employed for producing technical casein :—

Skim milk is placed in a vat fitted with stirrers consisting of a vertical shaft carrying several horizontal blades. These stirrers are set going so as to bring the whole of the liquid into rapid rotation, and dilute hydrochloric or acetic acid is run in by degrees. The casein begins to separate immediately in the form of tender white flakes, and the quantity of acid used is strictly limited to the amount necessary for precipitation; while continuing the stirring a sample of the liquid is taken, filtered, and the clear filtrate tested with a little of the acid. If it remains clear, the whole of the casein is evidently down already.

The liquid is next left alone until all the casein has settled down, whereupon the clear liquid is syphoned off by means of a rubber tube fitted with a glass funnel, the mouth of which is covered with fine gauze and is lowered into the liquid until it reaches the curd, which is kept back by the gauze sieve. The separated liquid contains albuminoid compounds, salts and the whole of the milk sugar present in the milk, for the recovery of which latter it can then be treated.

The casein left in the vat is stirred up with water, left to settle, the water run off, and the operation repeated two or three times. The casein, thus sufficiently purified, is placed in strong filter cloths and laid between wooden plates in a screw press. Pressure is applied gradually and so long as any liquid continues to drop. The casein is next taken out of the cloths, and as it still contains a considerable amount



of moisture, it is broken down into small lumps, which are spread out thinly on cloths stretched on frames. These are placed in a drying-room, kept at a temperature of about 86° F., until the casein is perfectly free from water and will crumble down to powder under the pressure of the finger.

When thoroughly dry, casein can be packed and stored in a dry room for an indefinite period, without undergoing alteration. On the other hand, the presence of even the smallest quantity of moisture enables micro-organisms to develop in the casein and cause putrefaction of the whole mass. The following method is a good one to adopt in packing casein. The dried product is spread on cloths and sprayed over with a small quantity of pure 95 per cent. alcohol, after which it is immediately packed tightly into square cardboard boxes, with a strip of paper pasted round the edge of the lid when closed. The minute quantity of spirit introduced into the casein volatilises, and forms an atmosphere in which no micro-organisms can develop.

Casein prepared in this manner will gradually swell up, in very dilute solutions of caustic alkalis or their carbonates, to a transparent mass, and eventually pass into solution. The same result can be obtained without drying the casein, the solution keeping well and having the advantage of being ready for use without waiting for the solid casein to swell and dissolve. With this object the washed casein is mixed in the vat with sufficient water to form a thick cream, and adding to this mixture about a quarter of a pint of aqueous ammonia per pound of dry curd present. This can be calculated approximately from the weight of milk taken in the first place, the average casein content being 3.2 per cent. After adding the ammonia the vat is covered up and the stirrers kept in motion for some time; whereupon, if sufficient ammonia has been used, the casein will be found to have dissolved to a clear viscous liquid, of a faint yellow tinge.

On the other hand, if the liquid is cloudy, more ammonia should be added, with stirring, until solution is effected. The finished solution is run into glass bottles at once and hermetically closed down. After prolonged standing, a small deposit of undissolved casein settles down in the bottles, the solution becoming perfectly bright. When poured out on glass, the solution dries to a hard, colourless and insoluble mass, of high lustre, on which account it serves as an excellent lacquer. Printing colours that are not sensitive to the action of ammonia may be mixed and printed with the liquid, the casein becoming insoluble and thus fixing the colour on the fabric.

A patent on the following lines, for preparing fat-free casein from skim milk, was taken out by Mierisch and Dr. Eberhardt. Ordinary "separated" milk contains 0.2 to 0.3 per cent. of fat, and if used for the preparation of casein, gives a product containing 6 to 8 per cent. of fat. The usual method of getting rid of this fat is by extraction with fat solvents or repeated solution in alkalis and reprecipitation by acids; but in the patented process the skim milk is mixed with alkali, then warmed and centrifugalised to expel the fat, and afterwards treated with acid, in the usual manner, to throw down the casein. For example, 100 gallons of skim milk are mixed with a solution of 2 to 4 lb. of caustic soda, the whole being warmed to 100° to 112° F. and put through the centrifugal separator until no more fat comes away. The casein is next thrown down with dilute sulphuric acid and collected, washed, pressed and, if necessary, dried. The product will satisfy practical requirements in respect of freedom from fat.

Riegel's method of precipitating casein with ethylsulphuric acid is intended to replace the use of acetic acid, lactic acid and sulphuric acid for this purpose. The acid in question shares with sulphuric and acetic acids the property

of precipitating the casein in an undecomposed, compact and non-mucinous form, but possesses the advantage that, owing to the ready solubility of its lime salt, the casein is obtained almost free from ash at the first precipitation. At the same time the casein is poorer in germs than when acetic acid or lactic acid is used, and the inverting action on the milk sugar is smaller. Crude ethylsulphuric acid is used, this being prepared by rapidly mixing equal volumes of concentrated sulphuric acid and strong alcohol, and leaving the mixture to stand for several hours in a warm place.

To obtain soluble casein in the dry commercial state, the curd is thrown down from the milk, washed to remove whey and any excess of precipitant, dried at a moderate temperature to preclude risk of burning, granulated, and allowed to absorb a small quantity of dissolved alkali by rapidly stirring the two together. Finally, the granulated alkaline product is dried in accordance with American patent, 664,318:

Szekely's patent (German patent, 126,423) relates to the decomposition of milk into casein and whey by means of carbonic acid. For this purpose, sweet new milk, cream, skim milk or buttermilk, is placed in a close vessel, warmed somewhat above 86° F., and a sufficient amount of carbonic acid gas is forced in under pressure to precipitate the whole of the casein when well shaken or stirred.

To neutralise the differences in skim milk in the separation of casein, C. H. Bellamy of Philadelphia adds to the casein in the preparation of casein glue an alkali arsenate (*e.g.*,  $\text{Na}_2\text{HAsO}_4$ ). This addition is stated to increase the adhesive power of the glue, preserve it from putrefaction, and form a kind of mordant, serving as a bind between the paper, the casein glue and any added colouring matter.

Pure casein, free from ash, is obtained by precipitating 1,000 parts of cold milk with 2.9 parts of acetic acid which

leaves the bulk of the lactalbumin in solution. The filtered and slightly washed precipitate is purified by repeated solution in water containing sufficient commercial ammonium carbonate to furnish a decidedly alkaline reaction, the filtered solution being then neutralised with acetic acid. According to Béchamp, this pure casein dissolves, when dried, in about 1,000 parts of water, as well as in alkalis and acids.

The Hoppe-Seyler method of preparing casein, as practised by Hammarsten, consists in treating milk with acetic acid, and dissolving the precipitate in dilute ammonia or sodium carbonate, an alkaline reaction being guarded against. This operation is repeated, and the casein is treated with alcohol and ether to completely eliminate the contained fat, a second treatment with acetic acid and soda being afterwards given. Provided a strongly alkaline reaction is avoided, the casein is not decomposed. The removal of fat can be facilitated by replacing new milk by skim.

According to another report, pure casein is obtainable by diluting milk with four times its own volume of water, and then adding sufficient acetic acid to bring the acid content of the mixture to 0.075-0.1 per cent. The precipitate is purified by trituration under water, and then immediately redissolved in very dilute potash, followed by reprecipitation with acetic acid. The casein is washed in water, rubbed down fine with 97 per cent. alcohol, drained and washed with ether.

Besana gives the following instructions for the preparation of casein for technical purposes:—

Skim milk from the separator is heated to about 95° F. in a cheese vat or similar vessel, direct steam being used if necessary. It is then treated with about 3 parts per mil. of crude hydrochloric acid, previously diluted with 5 to 6 volumes of water, and curdled, the whey being drained off and the curd spread out thinly on a sloping table to cool.



This done, the mass is washed with a spray of cold water or else churned with water, which is drawn off after the curd has subsided. After removing a further quantity of water by pressing the curd in a weighted sack or in a press under moderate load, the product, which is still moist, is broken down in a curd mill and is ready for sale in the damp state.

“Dry” casein is the kind generally wanted for technical purposes. Various forms of drying apparatus may be used, such as the hot-air apparatus for drying vegetables or heated drying chambers fitted with frames for supporting superimposed trays made of strong canvas, permeable to moisture. These hot-air appliances consume a great deal of fuel and are troublesome to manage unless fitted with expensive mechanical stirring or turning devices, the constant turning and breaking down of the casein being necessary. At the same time a constant drying temperature, between 122° and 175° F., must be maintained. For this purpose the following arrangement has proved very satisfactory and cheap, besides enabling the heat to be well utilised. Two small brick walls, about a foot high, are built, without foundations, 40 inches apart, each being topped by a coping of wood 6 inches square. The coping is surmounted by a thick strip of damp millboard about 2 inches wide, and this in turn by plates of sheet iron, 40 inches by 80, and  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch thick, fastened down by screws, so as to form a long horizontal flue 40 inches wide and 12 high. Where the ends of the iron plates join they are supported by wooden traverses to which they are screwed with an intervening layer of millboard as in the case of the copings. The two ends of this flue are closed by brick walls, through one of which exhaust steam is introduced, whilst an opening in the other enables the steam to escape into a small chimney. The flue should have a gentle slope towards this end so that the condensed moisture may drain away. The casein may be dried very quickly on these

iron plates by spreading it out on the farther end and turning it over with wooden shovels towards the hotter end. Unless erected indoors, the flue must be covered with a wide roof to protect the plates from rain. By means of this simple appliance, large quantities of casein can be dried in a short time, the only precaution necessary being to protect it from overheating by vigorous shovelling and breaking down the lumps, the flow of steam being also checked if found desirable.

By this means, 100 parts of skim milk will yield about  $8\frac{1}{2}$  parts of damp or  $3\frac{1}{2}$  parts of dry casein. This is put on the market as "technical casein" or "lactarin". It is soluble in alkalis, but insoluble in water unless the latter receives an addition of 10 per cent. of some alkali (*e.g.*, soda, borax or ammonia). The dry casein still contains about 10 per cent. of moisture, which constitutes one of the factors determining the quality of the product, though less important than the appearance and smell. The latter must on no account be ammoniacal, but recall that of fresh milk, and the colour must be pure white. The purer the colour and the more agreeable the smell, the higher the value.

Soluble casein is obtained from the moist product by dissolving the same in an alkali (caustic potash or soda, ammonia, lime water or baryta water), or in an alkali salt (carbonate of potash or soda), and evaporating the solution at moderate temperatures. This soluble casein is rarely prepared in dairies, since the industrial consumers of the article can make it more easily and cheaply themselves from the moist or dry product. On this account they usually specify the manner in which the moist casein is to be prepared. Consequently, when these particulars are specified in the contract, the casein-maker will do well to adhere to the instructions given, and not to employ some other method of preparation that may seem preferable to him, or he may conflict with the objects and views of his customer.

Another method of preparation, recommended by Just, is used in America, and furnishes a light, dry, porous product. Although similar methods have been employed in Germany for some years, the inventor obtained a patent in that country, the specification of which reads as follows: "A process for preparing milk casein in a light, dry, porous form, consisting in distributing a dilute aqueous solution of casein in a uniform thin layer over a suitable surface previously heated to over 200° F., whereby the casein is dried, the operation being performed under ordinary atmospheric pressure". The following modification is also described in the specification, but is not protected by the patent: Twenty-five gallons of water heated to 105° to 110° F. and containing 1 to 1½ lb. of carbonate of soda in solution, are used to dissolve 175 lb. of moist casein or 119 lb. of dry casein, with continued stirring. Two metal cylinders, mounted so close together that nothing thicker than a strip of paper can pass between them, are rotated in opposite directions and heated by steam at a temperature of 212° to 220° F., and the dissolved casein is allowed to flow down between them. The liquid dries immediately, and the thin, brittle layer of dried material is scraped or brushed off the rollers, whilst, if pressed through a hair sieve, it furnishes a fine, soluble casein powder.

This method is at all events cheap and simple, giving a good, stable product, provided the fat and milk sugar have been properly eliminated. The granting of the German patent took two years, a sign of the tenacity with which the inventor fought his case, though such a claim as that set forth above is very little protection, and it is difficult to see where the novelty comes in.

According to a written communication from the inventor, the process has been worked in America on a large scale since March, 1903, one factory treating 260,000 lb. of skim milk daily, whilst a second factory began operations in October, 1903.

## CHAPTER III.

### COMPOSITION AND PROPERTIES OF CASEIN.

CASEIN, the chief and characteristic albuminoid substance in milk, was, on account of its acid properties, long regarded as an albuminate, and was classed along with the alkali albuminates obtained by denaturing other albuminoid substances. Hoppe-Seyler, and more particularly Hammarsten, were the first to demonstrate its separate entity, with a composition varying according to the originating animal.

The casein of cows' milk consists of C, 52.96 per cent. ; H, 7.04 to 7.53 ; N, 15.60 to 15.91 ; O, 22.78 per cent. ; S, 0.758 to 0.82 ; and P, 0.8 to 0.847 per cent.

It is lacking in glycocoll and the carbohydrate group, but has a large proportion of tyrosin and tryptophane. Accordingly, it is readily decomposed by pepsin and trypsin, and does not furnish any hetero-albumose on peptonisation. As the sole native albumin, it is also attacked by erepsin.

Owing to the ease with which it is decomposed, casein also plays a special part in metabolism. The proportion of lysin and glutaminic acid is particularly high ; and according to Wildenow and Salkowski, paranucleic acid contaminated with albumin contains 3 to 4 per cent. of phosphorus. The salts of casein are specially important ; and, though like all albuminoids, it can form compounds with acids, and is therefore readily soluble in an excess of acid, its own acid characteristics are predominant. According to Lacqueur and Sackur, the equivalent molecular weight of casein in its compounds



with bases is 1,135, and its basicity is 4 to 6. The far higher molecular weights of 5,000 to 6,000, found by Salkowski, Hammarsten, Lehmann, Hempel and Soeldner, are based partly on hydrolysis and partly on the investigation of acid salts. Soeldner differentiates between two series of salts, Courant three. In milk, casein is present as calcium caseate; and, according to Courant, not as the neutral salt, but as calcium dicaseate, combined with calcium phosphate. This point, however, is not yet properly decided. Calcium caseate may, *per se*, possess the property of maintaining in solution or suspension the neutral calcium phosphate also present in the milk, or the milk may contain a true double salt of calcium caseate and calcium phosphate; in either case, the calcium phosphate is thrown down when casein is precipitated along with the total milk fat, the emulsification of which is therefore due to calcium caseate. This again is the reason of the great difficulty experienced in obtaining casein free from fat and calcium phosphate. Whilst free casein is perfectly insoluble in water, the neutral sodium and ammonium salts are readily soluble. Even the acid salts of casein are soluble in water, but the solutions are strongly opalescent. Calcium caseate dissolves well, but the solution has a distinctly milk-white appearance. Nutrose and plasmon are sodium caseate. Ammonium caseate is known as "Eucasein".

Casein is precipitated from solutions of these salts, and therefore also from milk, by very weak mineral acids or by strong acetic acid, and is redissolved when the precipitating acid is in excess. Precipitation of casein or its salts ensues when the solution is saturated with common salt, magnesium sulphate or sodium sulphate. For the bulk of the casein the limits in the case of ammonium sulphate are 2.2 and 3.6, though a slight cloudiness is already observed when 1.2 is reached. In other respects casein behaves in acid, neutral

or alkaline solution like the other albuminoids, *i.e.*, is precipitated by salts of the heavy metals, and certain complex organic acids, so-called alkaloid reagents, when the acid is in excess. In addition, casein is thrown down by most acid aniline dye-stuffs and a few complex organic acids, but only when the reaction is decidedly acid.

Potassium alum, in suitable concentration, will throw down the casein in milk, without affecting the other albuminoids present. With an excess of the salt, however, the precipitate is redissolved. Other important compounds of casein are those formed when milk is coagulated by rennet, whereby the casein is transformed into paracasein. Like the unaltered casein, this substance is readily soluble in alkalis, though its calcium salt is insoluble; hence, when a soluble calcium salt is present in the liquid, insoluble calcium paracaseate or cheese is formed. The coagulation of milk proceeds in two stages, occurring successively, the actual fermentative conversion of the casein by the rennet ferment, and the visible coagulation for which alone the presence of lime is necessary. Paracasein is not precipitated when the soluble calcium salts of the milk have been removed by oxalic acid. Halliburton would confine the name paracasein to the coagulated casein, calling the soluble casein "caseinogen".

In its other properties paracasein is identical with casein, but is thrown down more readily than the latter by common salt, so that it can be made to coagulate, in a way, by means of large quantities of salt without any addition of lime.

No real coagulation occurs when casein is exposed to high temperatures; and the solutions of its salts may be boiled without suffering any alteration. In the dry state, on the other hand, according to Lacqueur and Sackur, it becomes partly insoluble when warmed up to 94°-100° C.; whereas, according to the earlier report by Hammarsten,

this does not ensue below  $120^{\circ}$  to  $130^{\circ}$  C. Halliburton noticed a change when casein suspended in water was heated to  $75^{\circ}$  C. What happens to the casein when milk is boiled still remains unknown.

According to Richter, casein is precipitated from its solutions by sodium chloride or magnesium sulphate without change. Mineral acids in excess precipitate casein solutions. The solutions of the alkali and calcium salts of casein do not coagulate on heating. A lime-free solution of casein is not coagulable by rennet, though it becomes so when a calcium salt is added, even though in the meantime the rennet has been rendered inactive by boiling.

After Hammarsten had investigated this action of calcium salts on the curdling of milk by rennet, S. Loevenhart demonstrated that a similar effect is produced by the salts of lithium, beryllium, magnesium, strontium and barium, as also by the proto-salts of iron, cobalt, nickel and manganese.

Purified casein is a snow-white, perfectly ashless powder. The heat of combustion of 1 gramme of casein is 5.858 cal. It strongly reddens blue litmus paper, but is only soluble to the extent of a trace in water, though soluble in alkalis and in water containing calcium carbonate. It also dissolves in a 1 per cent. solution of sodium fluoride, and in ammonium oxalate or potassium oxalate. From solution it is precipitated by acids and by rennet. In the presence of salts (sodium chloride, and especially sodium acetate) the precipitation by acids is incomplete. When purified milk casein is boiled for five hours with 3 parts of hydrochloric acid (specific gravity 1.19), tyrosin, leucin, leucinide,  $C_5H_7NO$ , a little aspartic acid and glutamic acid are formed.

In the treatment of casein for the preparation of water-proof coverings (paints, varnishes, etc.), and particularly of plastic masses intended as substitutes for celluloid, or for other purposes, an important part is played by substances

which throw down the casein in an insoluble form from solutions of any kind. Though this may be done better by heating solutions or mixtures of casein along with lime or milk of lime, still heat is not applicable in all cases. Such precipitation can be effected at the ordinary temperature by treating the casein solution or mixture with metallic salts, especially those of copper (cupric sulphate), or with certain organic substances, *e.g.*, alkaline solutions of shellac, the addition of which immediately separates the water contained in the mass. A patent for the production of insoluble casein was taken out in America by Dunham, according to whom 15 parts of borax and 85 of commercial casein are dissolved in 400 parts of water, the solution being then treated with 15 parts of hexamethylene tetramine, and afterwards evaporated, the dried product being exposed to warmth and moisture. In this form casein is a suitable substitute for albumin.

A far more important matter to the casein industry is the German patent 99,509, or rather the additional patent thereto, according to which casein, albumoses and the liquid conversion products of glue and gelatine are rendered insoluble by formaldehyde. The insoluble products thus obtained can and do find technical application in the form of layers or coatings, as detailed below.

For certain purposes in chromo-lithography it is necessary to provide paper with a perfectly smooth, absorbent and yet resistant surface. This object is now accomplished by coating the paper with size or casein hardened with formaldehyde, a simple operation which has become of great importance in the paper industry as well as in chromo-lithography.

Similar fine, insoluble layers of casein can also be prepared without a paper backing, and are then specially adapted for supporting sensitised emulsions in photography (photographic films). In this case they supersede the celluloid hitherto



used, being free from its objectional qualities, inflammability and so forth.

Coatings of casein may also be applied to wall paper, improving its durability and making it washable.

It is, however, neither essential nor desirable that this coating should be applied when the paper is being made, since the continuity of the coating would, in that case, suffer when the paper was being cut and hung. It is therefore preferable to apply the coating when the paper is on the walls; and experience has shown that this can be done with ease and perfect success.

A solution of casein and formaldehyde is also suitable as a coating on smooth brickwork, in all cases where a waterproof and washable coating is desired. The varnish paints and enamel paints now used for this purpose are more troublesome, dearer, and have the great drawback of continuing to smell for a long time. On the other hand, casein varnish is cheap, easily applied, loses all smell in a few hours, and also forms an excellent disinfectant. This is certainly a valuable property for hospitals, barracks, dormitories, rooms, etc.

The insoluble compound of casein and formaldehyde can also be obtained in large blocks; and by means of a patent process, owned by the Vereinigte Gummiwaaren Fabriken Harburg-Wien (formerly Menier & Reithoffer), it is prepared in solid, horny plates and bars, forming a perfect substitute for ivory, ebony, horn, tortoiseshell, celluloid, coral, etc. The inventor has given the name "galalith" to this product.

The properties of galalith are such as to ensure it a great future. It is inodorous and unflammable, thus possessing, as already mentioned, a great advantage over celluloid. It can be dyed, and the crude article can be bent, blocked and stamped while warm, and retains its form perfectly when cooled. It does not attack metals, and is one of the best

insulating materials known for electrical purposes. These qualities are sufficient to secure for galalith a very extensive sphere of application, certain to react favourably on the milk industry.

Already this material is used for manufacturing a large number of articles, such as plates, combs, cigar-holders, fittings, etc.; and it is also possible to utilise galalith for accomplishing new technical results.

When a solution of casein is treated with formaldehyde and poured on to glass plates it furnishes transparent films, insoluble in water. Spitteler and Krische found that the addition of formaldehyde to casein solutions gave, on subsequent precipitation, products that swelled up in water and had a fracture like cartilage. On the other hand, they discovered that this drawback could be remedied by treating the casein with formaldehyde after precipitation by acids or lead acetate, preferably after the precipitate had been freed from water, as far as possible, by evaporation or pressure, the hardening with formaldehyde being then undertaken. The treatment gives products with the properties of horn. In their patent specification the inventors give a comparative table of the behaviour of buffalo horn and of casein products prepared in various ways, showing that while buffalo horn absorbs  $15\frac{1}{2}$  to 18 per cent. of water when submerged in that liquid for thirty-three days, the new product hardened with formaldehyde takes up 16 to 23 per cent. of water, and therefore behaves in a very similar manner.

The *determination of casein* is performed by precipitating the milk with magnesium sulphate (solid and in solution), the nitrogen in the precipitate being determined, and the casein calculated from the result. The filtrate from the casein precipitate is diluted, and the lactalbumin thrown down with tannic acid or phospho-tungstic acid, the nitrogen in this precipitate being also determined.

## CHAPTER IV.

### CASEIN PAINTS.

THOUGH it has long been known that casein combines with certain substances to form agglutinant compounds, which become more or less insoluble on exposure to the air, and though it has been stated that casein has been detected in old paintings, it is nevertheless only within the past forty to fifty years (indeed only within a couple of decades) that any extensive use has been made of it for this purpose. That an addition of milk to lime-washes greatly increases their durability has also long been known; and, in fact, such a mixture constituted the first casein paint, the casein of the milk forming with the caustic lime a compound which is at the basis of all such paints. The casein is rendered soluble, a result that can be produced, not merely with quicklime, but also with various substances having an alkaline reaction. The chief casein paints we shall here consider are those met with in commerce in the form of paste or liquid, containing the casein in a dissociated condition, and in some cases already mixed with other substances used in paint, such as linseed oil, boiled oil, resins or petroleum, in order to produce special effects. Others again—and of late these have become the most important of all—are supplied in the form of powder by the makers, and contain casein and alkali in the dry state. It is only when these paints are mixed with water, to make them fluid for use, that the alkali is dissolved and in turn acts as a solvent of the casein.

The coatings furnished by the different kinds of casein paint, dry without gloss, like all water-colour paints, and therefore exhibit a property which is difficult to impart to oil paints without impairing their durability. Under the influence of the air, the paint, too, acquires a certain firmness, and does not rub off like lime-washes. It is fairly durable when exposed to the air, but when in situations where it is continuously exposed to wet or heavy rains, *i.e.*, on the weather side of a building, it suffers more quickly than oil paints. On the other hand, all casein paints have the advantage of drying quickly and being easy to work, without requiring any special preparation of the surface to be painted, drying without gloss on brickwork, plaster, wood, canvas, etc., and without stopping the pores of brickwork. These paints are soaked in cold water in order to swell up the soluble binding constituents, salts and similar compounds, so that they may dissolve completely when diluted further with water, and also perform their chemical functions. In addition to the binding constituents the paint powders of this kind contain mineral matters (chalk, china-clay, clay, caustic lime, etc.), forming the bulk of the mass and giving covering power, whilst body colours are also present to produce the desired shade of colour. These pigments, which are present in merely minute proportion in the case of light colours, must be perfectly indifferent to lime and alkalis. Consequently, a green, for instance, compounded of Prussian blue and chrome yellow, cannot be used ; and, besides, the pigments must be as pure as possible.

The media of these cold-water paints, and on which their quality and utility chiefly depend, are mostly albuminoid substances of vegetable or animal origin, and generally consist of casein, dissolved by means of alkalis and afterwards rendered insoluble by the action of air on the coat of



paint, as already stated. Excellent paints are also made of blood albumin and similar substances; and in some cases, glue, mucilage, dextrin, gluten, or starch, in admixture with salts; insoluble compounds being thereby formed.

The paints with a basis of casein have proved to be best, and have the most extensive use. They are made from commercial casein powder, which readily dissolves in suitable proportions of caustic lime, ammonia, or salts of same that easily liberate these bases. When blood or blood albumin is used, the one must first be well dried and the other finely ground, in order that they may form a good bind with caustic lime. Glue also must be ground, and the mass may be treated with potassium bichromate, tannin, alum, etc., to make it insoluble on exposure to light. Gluten must be allowed to rot, and then be dried, ground and mixed with a certain proportion of alkali for use.

In preparing all these powdered paints, which are to be made up into a wash with cold or hot water or milk of lime, the main point is to adjust the proportions of casein, starch, glue, gluten and other albuminoids so as to properly fix the pigment and the material used as loading, or for shading the colours. An insufficient quantity of the medium would lower the durability of the paint below the limit expected of it, and it would not stand the action of rain, snow, etc., but wipe off with the hand, or brush off.

On the other hand, an excess of medium would make the paint streaky and liable to crack and peel off. Now, as the loading materials used require very different quantities of binding constituents to fix them properly, this circumstance must be borne in mind. The same applies to the body colours, which require a larger or smaller quantity of binding ingredients, according as they are specifically heavier or lighter. These pigments should be able to retain their colour when used in mixtures containing caustic lime, alkalis, or

substances with an alkaline reaction. Intimate mixture of the various ingredients is an important feature in these paint powders. The percentage of medium in these mixtures is relatively small, and yet it must be distributed in a perfectly uniform manner throughout the mass ; otherwise, if one portion of the paint contained too much, and another too little, the result would be noticed in the uneven character of the coat of paint. Careful mixing is therefore an essential feature.

To secure this result, the medium and pigments are



FIG. 9.—Werner-Pfleiderer Sifting Mill.

placed in a sifting mill like the Werner-Pfleiderer machine illustrated in Fig. 9. This consists of a wooden box or other receptacle, containing a spiral roller brush fitting and working exactly in a semicylindrical sieve. The materials are fed in at the top, and are carried round by the brush, all soft lumps being broken up and passing through the sieve along with the fine powder. On the other hand, all the hard lumps and waste matters are discharged through an opening at the end of the machine. From 1 to 30 cwt. per hour can be sifted in this way, according to the size of the machine.

When the ingredients have been carefully sifted they are put through a mixer of the Werner and Pfleiderer "Universal" mixer type (Fig. 10). As, with these cold water paints, powders of different densities have to be mixed together, the machine should be fitted with two-speed gear—fast and slow. The fast speed acts as a sort of disintegrator, breaking up lumps and large granules and thereby ensuring a more thorough admixture of the ingredients. Consequently, with a machine of this kind, the preliminary sifting may sometimes be omitted.

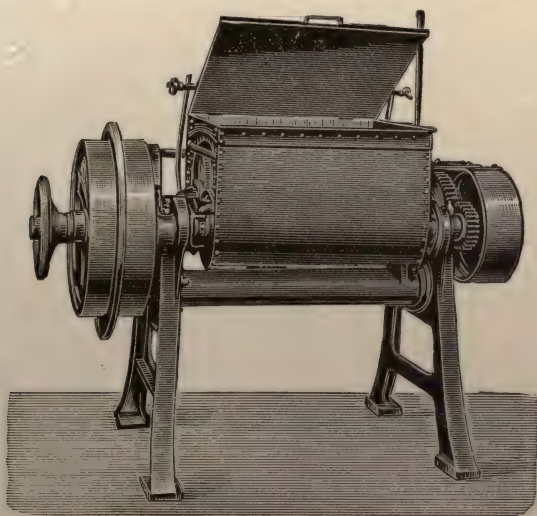


FIG. 10.—"Universal" Two-speed Mixer.

The product obtained by this process of fine sifting and intimate mixing will satisfy all requirements.

#### "MARBLE LIME" COLOUR FOR OUTSIDE WORK.

The following ingredients are passed through a colour sifting and mixing machine:—

100	parts by weight	of casein, soluble in alkali.
100	" "	of caustic lime from marble.
800	" "	of levigated chalk.
1	part by	" of borax.
2 to 2½	parts by	" of ultramarine (for white only).

It is extremely important that they should all be very finely powdered. The caustic lime ( $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ ) is obtained as a fine white powder by slaking lumps of pure calcined marble lime with one-third their own weight of water in a porcelain vessel. The water and lime combine to form calcium hydrate, with liberation of heat and a faint alkaline smell. The resulting slaked lime should be kept in tightly closed vessels or, preferably, used at once.

With regard to making this preparation in different colours it should be noted that the mixing of the earthy pigments or so-called lime-proof colours may take place either when the paint is being made or else just before use (see instructions later). The following pigments are fast to lime: Antimony yellow, barium yellow, barium white, ivory black, chrome green, chrome orange, colcothar, green earth, cadmium yellow, cobalt blue, cobalt green, Mars brown, Naples yellow, ochre, Paris black, satinober, Schweinfurt green, Terra di Siena, ultramarine, umber, Vandyke brown, and zinc white. If the pigments are added at the time of manufacture, the weight of levigated chalk must be reduced by that of the pigment used: for instance:—

Casein, soluble in alkali . . . . .	10 parts.
Caustic lime . . . . .	10 „
Levigated chalk . . . . .	40 „
Ochre . . . . .	40 „

Borax as before; ultramarine nil.

When, by making a little of the mass up into paint, the ingredients have been found to be thoroughly mixed, the powder must be packed in tightly closed boxes, lined with paper. In this way the article will keep indefinitely in a dry place, without losing any of its properties.

Making this powder up into paint is a comparatively easy matter, though a certain amount of care is necessary to ensure good results. The operation may be performed in any vessel that is clean and free from grease, in the following



manner : 50 parts of water are added by degrees to 100 parts of the powder, with constant stirring, which is continued until the mass is homogeneous and free from lumps. The mass is then covered with a thin layer of water and left for about three-quarters of an hour, after which it is again stirred, and more and more water is added until a workable paint is obtained, of about the same consistency as oil paint. When intended for coating rough surfaces the paint should be a little thinner, but may be thicker when used to replace oil paint for smooth surfaces. It should be used without delay, as it is liable to set hard in a comparatively short time, becoming unfit for use in about twelve hours.

Hence, it is not advisable to make up any more of the paint than can be used the same day. If, after the paint has remained some time in the vessel, it skins over, this skin must be removed. Made up white paint of this kind can be afterwards coloured by mixing up the pigments with water to a pap, and stirring this into the paint until uniformly incorporated therewith. In this case also it is desirable to try a little of the paint before using it on the work in hand.

The application of the paint and the preparation of the surface are the same as mentioned in the chapter on casein painting. A solid and clean surface is essential to success. As the paint will adhere to any solid surface, such as lime, plaster of Paris, or cement, plaster, brick, metal, stone or wood, as well as on canvas without any preparation, all that is necessary is to clean the surface of dust and dirt to begin painting at once. The paint is laid on with a clean, but somewhat worn brush, free from grease, the paint working better than with a new brush. It is laid on fairly thick and spread by working the brush about, this method ensuring a better hold on the substratum and giving a more uniform coating free from spottiness. In other respects the opera-

tion is much the same as when oil paint is used; and the paint itself is stirred in the can at frequent intervals.

The paint dries very quickly, as smooth as enamel, and in thirty-six to forty-eight hours can be washed and will stand the weather. On account of its elasticity it can be varnished, painted or stencilled on. If applied to a firm substratum, it will neither crack nor peel off; but the surface must be freed from old coatings of lime-wash or distemper before the casein paint is laid on. In the case of oil paint that is still intact, this precaution is not necessary.

If it is desired to have a glossy paint for indoor use, the painted surface is sprayed over with a liquid mixture of wax and turpentine, which is afterwards polished.

Notwithstanding their power of standing weather, cold water paints are porous and do not prevent the circulation of air. On account of their good qualities, these paints are in frequent use both for outdoor use and for interior work, in dwelling-houses, factories, hospitals, etc., as also for coating wood, iron, cement, etc.

#### CASEIN PAINT ACCORDING TO AN OLDER METHOD.

The curd of sour milk is boiled for about a quarter of an hour in a well-enamelled or glazed vessel and then transferred to a sieve where it is washed with cold, hard water until perfectly free from acidity, after which it is wrapped in a cloth and pressed until only a little moisture is left. In this condition it is mixed with one-fourth its weight of burnt lime, previously slaked with a threefold weight of water, the colouring matter, mixed or ground with oil or water, being next added. The resulting paint may be applied to stone, gypsum or zinc, but if intended for use on wood it should be first mixed with 10 per cent. of linseed oil. If too thick, the paint can be thinned down with oil or water.

*Sundry Recipes for Casein Paint.*

Casein . . . . .	144 parts by weight.
Slaked lime . . . . .	7 "
Spanish white . . . . .	280 "
Earth pigment . . . . .	2 "
Water . . . . .	160 "

Another proved recipe is :—

Skim milk . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ gall.
Freshly slaked lime . . . . .	6 oz.
Linseed oil or poppy oil . . . . .	4 oz.
Spanish white . . . . .	3 $\frac{3}{4}$ lb.

The analysis of a casein paint for coarse work gave the following percentage composition: Dry residue, 51·6 per cent.; water, 48·4 per cent.; ash in residue, 29·7 per cent.; nitrogen, 0·537 per cent. (casein, 3·36 per cent.). The ash consisted of 24·6 parts of calcium oxide, 3·22 parts of silica and 2·27 parts of ferric oxide. The silica was derived from the earthy pigment used. This paint can be imitated by slaking 30 parts of quick-lime with 70 parts of water, allowing the product to cool down and then stirring into it 20 parts of white curd obtained from separated milk. A suitable amount of pigment is added to the mixture.

## CASEIN ENAMEL PAINT.

To prepare casein enamel paint, soda casein is intimately mixed with enamel colours—namely, glass fluxes coloured with metallic oxides (like the preparations used in porcelain painting), the whole being ground in water. The product does not dry with the dull surface of the ordinary casein paints, but has a gloss more nearly resembling that of oil paint.

## CASEIN FAÇADE PAINT.

This is a new type of ready-made casein paint, the chief peculiarity of which is that it must be protected from contact



with carbonic acid gas before use, and must therefore be packed in airtight tins. These paints can be made in a variety of colours, and in the form of a thick pap, which is diluted with water for use. They are prepared by intimately mixing 200 parts by weight of casein in a pulverising machine with 40 parts by weight of powdered and sifted slaked lime, the whole being stirred to a thick pap with some body colour that has been mixed with water. Finally, the paint is put through a mill and packed in airtight tins.

The most suitable pigments for this purpose are :—

- For White.*—Zinc-white, lithopone, blanc fixe, heavy spar.
- „ *Yellow.*—Ochre, Indian yellow, Naples yellow.
- „ *Brown.*—Any brown earth pigment.
- „ *Black.*—Ivory black, vine black, lampblack.
- „ *Red.*—Red lead, colcothar, Indian red, madder red.
- „ *Blue.*—Ultramarine, cobalt blue, smalt.
- „ *Green.*—Green earth, cobalt green, chromic oxide green, etc.

#### COLD-WATER PAINT IN POWDER FORM.

In making this class of paint the proportions must be selected in such a manner that the mixture shall contain 80 parts of dry casein to every  $2\frac{1}{2}$  parts of dry slaked lime (or caustic soda or potash). Useful results can be obtained from the following recipes :—

- 45 parts by weight of powdered casein.
- 20 „ of powdered slaked lime.
- 150 „ of kaolin.
- 300 „ of levigated chalk.
- 5 to 20 „ of pigment, according to the colour desired.

For a stone-coloured paint, the following proportions are suitable :—

- 100 parts of above paint mass.
- 3 „ of light or dark French ochre.
- 2 „ of chrome yellow.
- $1\frac{1}{2}$  „ of Cassel brown ;

or any of the pigments mentioned below, together or separately :—



1½	parts of colcothar.
1½	„ of vine black.
2	„ of graphite.
4	„ of chrome green (limeproof).
4	„ of stone green.
2	„ of ultramarine.

## KISTORY'S RECIPE FOR CASEIN PAINT AND VARNISH.

Professor Modets Kistory, of Moscow, recommends for casein varnish a mixture of 32 parts of sifted curd and 32 of water, stirred together at 64° F., the pap being forced through a metal sieve in order to secure more intimate admixture and subdivision of the particles. Meanwhile, some freshly burned lime is gradually slaked with water at the above-named temperature, so as to crumble down to a fine powder. Of this powder  $\frac{3}{4}$  part is mixed with 3½ parts of water, triturated and then filtered through blotting-paper. The two ingredients are finally mixed together by stirring, which is continued until the mass, originally somewhat stiff, has attained workable consistency.

## PURE CASEIN PAINTS FOR WALLS, ETC.

1. *Black.*

50	parts by weight of casein varnish.
13	„ by weight of lampblack.

3. *Chalk White.*

50	parts casein varnish.
32	„ chalk.

5. *Red.*

50	parts casein varnish.
16	„ vermilion.

7. *Blue.*

50	parts casein varnish.
8	„ Berlin blue.
4	„ white lead.

2. *Yellow.*

50	parts casein varnish.
10	„ chrome yellow.

4. *Fine White.*

50	parts casein varnish.
35	„ white lead.

6. *Cheap Red.*

50	parts casein varnish.
60	„ colcothar.

8. *Green.*

50	parts casein varnish.
14	„ white lead.
21	„ chrome green.

9. *Ochre.*

50	parts casein varnish.
12	„ ochre.

## CASEIN PAINTS FOR WOODWORK AND IRON.

1. *Black.*

50 parts casein varnish.  
15 „ black, ground in oil.

3. *Chalk White.*

50 parts casein varnish.  
30 „ chalk, ground in oil.

5. *Red.*

50 parts casein varnish.  
50 „ vermilion, ground in oil.

or—

100 parts casein varnish.  
50 „ colcothar, ground in oil.

7. *Green.*

50 parts casein varnish.  
50 „ chrome green, ground in oil.

2. *Yellow.*

50 parts casein varnish.  
25 „ chrome yellow, ground in oil.

4. *White Lead.*

50 parts casein varnish.  
50 „ white lead, ground in oil.

6. *Blue.*

40 parts casein varnish.  
50 „ Berlin blue, ground in oil.

8. *Ochre.*

110 parts casein varnish.  
50 „ ochre, ground in oil.

Casein paints, drying without gloss, are therefore suitable for painting house fronts, iron and other metal work, and also for canvas. Their most advantageous application is for the purpose first named, since they can then be prepared in large quantity, used up at once and will dry in a few hours. They enter into combination with the underlying plaster and are thereby rendered more durable.

The paints prepared as above are thinned down to a workable consistency with further quantities of casein varnish, and are then laid on as evenly as possible, in the same way as oil paint. The first coating will dry in about an hour, and a second coating can be applied a few hours later. This property of drying quickly is a great point of superiority over oil paint, since casein paints can, therefore, be used during unfavourable weather and seasons without any fear of the paint washing away or peeling off. These paints are also inodorous, whereas the smell of varnish and turps hangs about oil paint for a long time.

For woodwork the paint is prepared in the same way, but three or four coatings are necessary to cover the wood properly. It can then be grained and varnished, just as in the case of oil paint.

Ironwork must be coated with casein oil paint, as the ordinary casein paint will not stick to the metal. The iron should be freed from rust and the paint applied as a thin coating. Owing to the rapid drying of the paint it is less subject to injurious influences, but should be protected from these as much as possible to prevent the paint washing or peeling off and thus defeating the object of the operation.

#### CASEIN-SILICATE PAINTS.

Casein-silicate paint is a fermented compound of casein with potassium or sodium silicate ("water-glass"), the casein being dissolved in caustic soda or potash and stirred up with the alkali silicate and a sufficient quantity of diatomaceous earth until the resulting grey-brown mass is perfectly homogeneous. The paint can be shaded by the addition of lime-proof colours up to 10 per cent. It forms a useful indoor and outdoor coating for stone, brick and fresh dry plaster (lime or cement), and it can also be very advantageously used in very damp rooms. Cheap fireproof paints for wood, canvas, etc., can be easily made by mixing these silicate paints with asbestos or other fireproof material.

The addition of casein to water-glass causes gradual silication, so that, unlike ordinary silicate paints, the coating is not completely hard in a few hours, but only at the end of two to three days. This circumstance is owing to the formation of a compound between the casein and the alkali of the water-glass. If the paint is desired to possess greater elasticity it is advisable to add a small quantity of saponified water-glass along with the ordinary silicate solu-

tion; and a higher gloss may be obtained by means of a solution of shellac and water-glass.

Though silicate paints offer many advantages over oil paints they have failed to make much headway up to the present, owing to the difficulties encountered in their preparation and use. Among these difficulties are the low range of colours attainable and inability to stand the weather. In fact, only the following pigments have been found suitable for use in silicate paints:—

*For Blue.*—Ultramarine and smalt.

„ *Yellow.*—Barium chromate, uranium oxide and ochre.

„ *Black.*—Lampblack, boneblack and graphite.

„ *Green.*—Chrome oxide, ultramarine green and cobalt green.

„ *Red.*—Iron reds.

„ *Orange.*—Chrome red.

„ *Brown.*—Colcothar, burnt sienna, brown manganese oxide; these do not curdle the silicate.

For white, zinc white, white lead and barium sulphate can only be used in small quantities and must be mixed with the silicate just before use.

Used for red, chrome red and red lead alter the silicate less rapidly, but still too quickly to permit of their use to more than a limited extent.

On the other hand, an admixture of casein with silicate paint retards the hardening of certain pigments, especially white lead. The mixture is easily prepared by tritulating fresh curd with a little sodium silicate (density, 33° B.) to a uniform mass and then stirring in the remainder of the silicate.

### MILK PAINTS.

Pigments are mixed with milk and water to workable consistency, and then applied to a surface previously coated with silicate paint. When the milk paint is dry, it is topped with silicate paint by spraying.



1. *White.*

3 parts milk.  
7 „ water.  
10 „ zinc white.

3. *Light Green.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
10 „ zinc white.  
5 „ green earth.

5. *Brown.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
10 „ umber.

7. *Blue.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
10 „ ultramarine.

9. *Red.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
25 „ vermilion ;

2. *Grey.*

3 parts milk.  
7 „ water.  
10 „ zinc white.  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  part lampblack.

4. *Yellow.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
10 „ ochre.

6. *Red-Brown.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
10 „ burnt sienna.

8. *Black.*

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
10 „ ivory black.

or—

2 parts milk.  
5 „ water.  
12 „ colcothar.

No particular difficulty attaches to the compounding of pigments for casein-silicate paint, but care should be exercised not to take pigments that harden rapidly.

CASEIN-SILICATE PAINT RECIPES.

1. *Blue.*

5 parts casein-silicate vehicle.  
3 „ ultramarine.

3. *Black.*

8 parts casein-silicate.  
3 „ bone or ivory black.

5. *Red.*

5 parts casein-silicate.  
4 „ colcothar.

2. *Yellow.*

5 parts casein-silicate.  
5 „ ochre.

4. *Green.*

5 parts casein-silicate.  
11 „ chrome green.

6. *Brown.*

5 parts casein-silicate.  
4 „ brown manganese oxide.

7. *White.*

5 parts casein-silicate.

5 „ zinc white.

8. *Grey.*

5 parts casein-silicate.

5 „ zinc white.

 $\frac{1}{4}$  part lampblack.

or—

6 parts casein-silicate.

5 „ zinc white.

 $\frac{1}{4}$  part lampblack. $\frac{1}{2}$  „ ultramarine.

## TROJEL'S BOILED OIL SUBSTITUTE.

H. Trojel proposes to make a cheap substitute for boiled oil by carefully mixing together 100 parts of casein, 10 to 25 parts of soap solution and 20 to 50 parts of slaked lime, 25 to 40 parts of turps being afterwards stirred in by degrees, and the whole thinned down with water to the consistency of boiled oil. If this preparation is to be kept for some time, a little ammonia is added, to keep the casein from settling out. The mass dries very quickly and can be mixed with colour for coating damp brick or wooden walls. It also holds well on metal, and becomes insoluble in water on drying.

## CALSOMINE WASH.

This preparation consists of a mineral base in combination with a binding medium having the property of solubility in water and oxidising to a perfectly insoluble product when exposed to the air in the form of a coat of paint. This paint is therefore waterproof, and possesses the properties of oil paint in this respect and in power of standing the influence of the weather. The pigment is a white or coloured powder consisting fundamentally of magnesium silicate or talc, and is added to the binding medium in the proportion of 90 parts to 10. It is also practicable to use 20 parts of lime, 70 of chalk and 10 of binding medium; and these proportions may be modified in turn. The binding medium is compounded

of casein and lime, the former being obtained, as a dry white powder, by treating milk with an acid at 100° F. Sixty parts of this powder are mixed with 20 parts of dry slaked lime, whereupon the casein becomes soluble in water, though this property disappears on oxidation. Any convenient body colour may be incorporated with the mixture, and when the whole is thinned with water it furnishes an easy working and waterproof paint.

### QUICK-DRYING CASEIN PAINT.

When mixed with such volatile substances as turps, petroleum, benzol, etc., dissociated casein acquires the property of drying very quickly. Hence, by preparing a solution of casein along with oil or balsam, and thinning it down with petroleum, a product is obtained which is highly elastic as well as quick drying.

A mixture of 8 parts of this medium, with about 10 of zinc white, lithopone, etc., forms a very useful light paint for outdoor or indoor use on woodwork or metal. It is worth noting that the addition of petroleum, benzol, or the like, causes the particles of the paint to penetrate deeply into wood and the fine joints in ironwork without stopping the circulation of air. This protects the iron from rusting; and the antiseptic effect of the petroleum preserves wood from rotting and fungoid growths. Oil paint is soon spoiled in appearance when exposed to ammoniacal exhalations, but they have no effect on petroleum-casein paints. The latter dry readily and do not darken in course of time; neither does the smell of petroleum hang about them very long.

Petroleum may be replaced in these paints by benzol, turps, naphtha, xylol and ethereal oils like oil of spike lavender, etc. When the paint is to be used for outside work on timber or brickwork an addition of linseed oil is desirable, and the paint should be thinned down considerably so as to

allow the particles to penetrate deep into the underlying material.

In places exposed to mechanical or atmospheric influences, or on damp walls, these quick-drying casein paints will be found highly advantageous.

#### BOILED OIL SUBSTITUTE.

A substitute for boiled oil may be prepared by adding to 100 parts by weight of casein 10 to 20 parts of a 1 to 10 per cent. solution of soap, followed by 20 to 25 parts of slaked lime, the mixture being carefully kneaded until a homogeneous mass is formed. It is afterwards thinned by the gradual addition of 20 to 40 parts of turps and sufficient water to bring the consistency down to that of boiled oil. If the varnish is to be kept for any length of time, a little ammonia should be added to prevent the precipitation of the calcium caseate. This substitute is much cheaper than boiled oil, and dries so quickly that the paint made with it can be applied in two coatings in immediate succession.

#### RING'S COLD WATER PAINT.

G. R. Ring, of New Brighton, mixes casein or some other albuminoid substance with a filling of levigated chalk, gypsum, lime, talc, pigments, etc., the whole being ground together. Glue or similar material is then mixed with hydraulic lime, and ground. The two fundamental ingredients thus obtained are mixed together, with a further quantity of filling material, to form the paint, which is thinned down with water for use.

#### FORMOLACTIN.

Under this name the Aktiengesellschaft für chemische Industrie "Union," of Vienna, has put on the market a liquid intended for use as a wash or for printing on paper or



analogous material in order to make the same washable, waterproof and dustless, besides disinfecting it. Formolactin is a concentrated solution of casein and formaldehyde, thick and milky in appearance.

When applied as a coating on any surface, formolactin also acts as a disinfectant. This disinfecting action can be renewed at any time by washing the surface over with a 1 per cent. solution of formaldehyde, without the use of any special apparatus, and without injuring the paper or any object in the room in the slightest degree.

On this account formolactin is highly suitable for painting bedrooms, hospital wards, smoking-rooms, living-rooms, etc., the cleaning of which is greatly facilitated by its use.

In consequence of its content of formaldehyde, formolactin destroys any nests of insects present in crevices in the walls to which it is applied.

The instructions for using this preparation are as follows:—

Formolactin is diluted with a 2 per cent. solution of formaldehyde, prepared by dissolving 5 parts of commercial 40 per cent. formaldehyde (formalin) in 95 parts of water. The degree of dilution depends on the amount of gloss desired and on the absorbent character of the wall paper. Generally speaking, equal parts of formolactin and the said 2 per cent. solution of formaldehyde will be right for good ordinary wall paper. If higher gloss is desired or the paper is more absorbent, then 1 part of the 2 per cent. solution can be taken to 2 parts of formolactin. For a dull gloss and less absorbent paper the dilution may be increased to 1:2.

A wide, soft brush is used, and no more of the paint is laid on than the paper will take up, otherwise it will trickle down and a patchy appearance will be presented.

The colour of most wall papers is made to look brighter

by a coating of this preparation, a fact which should be borne in mind when the paper is being selected.

After applying the coating it is left three to four hours to dry, and the room is afterwards ventilated in order to get rid of the smell of the formaldehyde. This may be accelerated by sprinkling ammonia on strips of wadding and allowing it to evaporate inside the room. The smell of formaldehyde, however, is by no means injurious to health.

If the first coating does not produce the desired lustre, or fails to cover the paper properly, a second coating, properly thinned, may be laid on without affecting the durability of the covering.

The best way to wash and clean wall papers coated with this preparation is with lukewarm soap and water, to which  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of commercial formaldehyde has been added as an antiseptic.

#### WATERPROOF PAINT FOR PLAYING CARDS.

Playing cards may be coated with a mixture of satin white—precipitated calcium sulphate—and an alkaline solution of casein. The coating is waterproof and washable, whilst still leaving the paper sufficiently absorbent to allow the cards to be printed in the usual way.

The best mixture for this purpose consists of 80 parts of satin white, 16 of casein, 2 to 4 of caustic soda or ammonia and 25 or more of water. The inventor of the preparation believes that the satin white combines with the dissolved casein in such a manner as to render the latter insoluble when the coating has been applied and allowed to dry for some time.

This coating is said to be particularly useful in imparting to playing cards the desired enamel-like appearance, and to be capable of taking the most delicate multiple colour printing. The satin white may be partly replaced by blanc fixe.

## CASEIN COLOUR LAKE.

The use of casein as a precipitant is advisable in making colour lakes, kaolin being employed as the substratum. For instance, Dreher recommends grinding to paste 30 parts of finely ground kaolin and 20 of lukewarm water, followed by repeating the operation with an addition of 80 parts of dissolved casein (10 parts of casein, 20 of water and 1 to 2 of ammonia). One hundred parts of dye solution (0·5 per cent. strength) are next added and well mixed, the whole being then treated with 2 parts of a 1 per cent. solution of tin tetrachloride, added drop by drop. After being washed and pressed, the precipitate is dried at 60° C., or at 80° to 100° C. if the dye will stand that temperature. Both acid and basic aniline dyes can be precipitated on any substratum by this method. The resulting lakes are very bright in colour and are very fast to water. Tin tetrachloride may be replaced by other salts having an acid reaction, such as aluminium chloride, tin acetate, etc., but the acetate must be freed from any excess of acetic acid, since this exerts a solvent action on the lake. The method is particularly useful for precipitating rhodamines and eosines, which it converts into extremely brilliant fine red lakes that are non-poisonous. The casein lakes also merit attention for coloured bookwork and litho printing, and for wall paper and calico printing.

## PAINT FOR MARKING BAGS, IRON BARRELS, CASES, ETC.

A good paint which will stick on fabrics, paper, wood, sheet-iron, etc., and is therefore suitable for marking and stencilling cases, wrapping, jute sacks, etc., is prepared in the following manner:—

About 20 parts by weight of water are heated to boiling in a glass vessel, and 1 part of aniline dye is stirred in,

eosine being used for red, and phenol black or deep black for black. When this is dissolved, 2 parts of soluble casein are stirred in. If the liquid seems too thick when cold, and therefore difficult to lay on with the brush, it must be diluted with a corresponding amount of hot water.

The aniline dyes may be replaced by logwood solution ; but tincture of gall nuts is not suitable for this purpose.

Stencilling paste is made by mixing pipeclay with ivory black or lampblack. The pipeclay (kaolin) is suitably coloured with aniline dye, carefully incorporated with the ivory black or lampblack, and then introduced into a thin solution of casein. After being put through a paint mill, the mass is packed in tin boxes.

#### CASEIN-CEMENT PAINT.

Häusler recommended English Roman cement for this purpose. If the boards to be coated are left unplaned, and pillars and beams are gone over with the roughing plane, the following method is recommended ; and the wood will not only look like stone, but behave as though actually petrified.

One part of English Roman cement is stirred up with 2 of washed scouring sand, 1 part of fresh curd and  $\frac{3}{4}$  part of skim milk, no more being made ready at a time than can be used up in an hour. While the mass is being applied, it must be kept continually stirred by an assistant in order to prevent the sand from settling to the bottom. The coating is laid on as thin and smoothly as possible, and as soon as dry is followed by a second. In summer it dries quickly and sets as hard as stone. Finally, woodwork that is to stand upright is coated with a mixture of boiled oil and an earthy pigment, a double coating being applied to sloping woodwork, and 3 to 4 on horizontal or exposed work that is liable to be trodden on.



For smoothly planed woodwork, Häusler used the sub-joined mixture with equal success: English Roman cement, 2 parts; fresh curd, 1 part; buttermilk,  $\frac{3}{4}$  part; the whole being well stirred together and made up in only sufficient quantity to last for a short time. The Roman cement must not be at all stale.

## CHAPTER V.

### THE TECHNICS OF CASEIN PAINTING.

CASEIN painting is based on the principle that casein possesses the property of forming extremely resistant and permanent compounds, both with the pigment and also with the substratum. The subject is, therefore, divisible into several sections, *viz.*:—

1. Preparation of the ground.
2. Preparation of the binding medium.
3. Preparation and application of the casein paint.

Although from its nature casein painting is no more difficult than any other branch of the art certain precautionary regulations must nevertheless be observed in the preparation of the ground and surface to be painted on. In the first place, surfaces of solid and granular lime- or cement-plaster; surfaces already coated with a layer of oil paint, and surfaces consisting of ordinary building stone, or ornaments of clay, wood, sheet metal, etc., must be thoroughly cleaned before painting is begun. If casein paint is to be applied to rough lime plaster the latter must be brushed over with diluted milk which has been carefully skimmed and mixed with the right quantity of water. Defective places in the plaster of house fronts must be patched up with mortar, or preferably with a mass composed of 1 part of patent lime and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  to 4 parts of pure sand. Patent lime is made by allowing solutions of tin and zinc chloride to act on lime,

and it will also bear additions of ground marble, cement and earthy pigments.

New cement plaster, or such as exhibits fine cracks, moisture or efflorescent salts, is best washed over with dilute hydrochloric or sulphuric acid (1 part of acid to 8 to 10 of water), and after a short time has elapsed wiped with a rag and left to dry. A preliminary coating of caoutchouc butter, Kessler's fluoride paint, diluted blood, etc., is also advisable.

For indoor use the ground should be impregnated with alum, 1 part of which is dissolved in 5 of hot water and then diluted with 10 parts more. This soaking, however, is only needed for walls that have so far been coated with lime paint or distemper. Gerhardt's paint soap is also recommended for the same purpose, its antiseptic properties and power of rendering animal matter insoluble fitting it for use on articles where fungoid growth is feared. The penetration of this preparation into the ground increases the durability of the casein paint, especially if the alum impregnation and Gerhardt's soap treatment be combined.

Joints, cracks or holes in brick or woodwork must be filled up with undiluted casein paint; but large fissures are best stopped with casein putty (*q.v.*).

If there are any damp places in the plaster, and it is desired to prevent them showing through, they should be impregnated with a thin solution of shellac before the paint is applied. Certain impregnating varnishes are also sold for the same purpose.

Metals, such as zinc, copper and iron, may be painted with quick-drying casein paints without any preparation, provided the surface is clear and not covered with a film of oxide. Should this, however, be present in the form, say of iron rust, it must be removed, for instance by washing with caustic soda and petroleum.

Finally, in the case of surfaces that are to be decorated,

it is necessary to provide a non-absorbent surface, to form a suitable ground for painting on. A special preparation is required for fresco painting, it being essential for the ground to be thick and dry, so as to prevent the appearance of any efflorescence from the brickwork underneath. For this reason, the plaster should be composed of as many layers as possible, each dried separately. Two to four strata of coarse plaster and an upper one of fine plaster are usually sufficient. Each layer should be thoroughly dry before the next one is put on, the surface being well moistened with water just before the next coating is applied. The bottom layer must be coarse grained and thicker than the others, the total thickness being 1 to 2 inches.

The coarse plaster is prepared of mortar from 1 part by volume of patent lime and 2 parts of clean, coarse, sharp sand (preferably quartz sand), burnt fireclay or powdered stone, together with about 10 per cent. of good Portland cement. This mortar is applied to the wall surface, beaten with a wooden bar to drive out air bubbles, and left to dry for as long as possible. On this surface, after wetting it with pure or boiled water that has been allowed to cool, the fine plaster is applied, the mortar for which is compounded of 1 part patent lime, 1 part fine, sifted, dust-free, clean sand and 1 part marble sand, the whole mixed with water that has previously been boiled. This mortar is also beaten to expel air bubbles in the mixing trough, and is then laid on over the coarse plaster. As soon as the surface has dried dull, it is wetted with a little boiled and cooled water and worked over with a smoothing board, any residual roughness being smoothed away by a sheet of zinc after the mortar has set to such an extent that it merely gives a little under the pressure of the finger. Directly this upper layer is dry it can be painted on with the necessary casein paints, and retouched with the same colours after drying.



To facilitate the fresco painting the upper layer of plaster can be put on in sections, or else kept soft for a considerable time by wetting it with water that has been boiled, or by hanging wet cloths over the surface. This prevents the too rapid crystallisation of the lime, which would otherwise occur.

Dry fresco painting is performed in the following manner : old or dry plaster walls are scrubbed with a stone until the upper surface has been worn away and the sound absorbent plaster is reached ; but if the crust is sound and rough grained it need not be removed. A mixture of fluid casein medium, white outdoor cement and 10 per cent. of calcined magnesia is then mixed and diluted with previously boiled and cooled water, the first coating being thinner than the others ; and, the wall having been damped with recooled or rain water, several coatings of this mixture are applied in succession. As soon as the surface has dried dull several coatings of ground colour are laid on, and the decorations and painting are then applied.

According to Martin, the aforesaid out-door cement is also known as "white Portland cement," and is prepared by mixing 1 per cent. of iron-free kaolin, 3 to 5 parts of pure white chalk, followed by 2 to 5 per cent. of gypsum or 3 to 5 per cent. of magnesium chloride. The ingredients, wet or dry mixed, are calcined in an oven.

Probably the best method of imitating the old Pompeian wall paintings in character and durability is the dry fresco process of Gerhardt. In some cases, however, it is possible to dispense with scouring the walls beforehand, replacing this treatment by the less troublesome process of soaking the walls several times over with paint soap at the completion of the work, this treatment increasing the brightness of the colours and improving their character and durability.

After the impregnated surface has dried it may be polished to a dull gloss with a brush. The precautions specified must,

however, be adopted in order to secure the intimate connection between the painting and the ground, so necessary to render the painting durable.

#### COMPOUNDING THE BINDING MEDIUM.

Next to the substratum, the most important thing in casein painting is the medium, since on this depends not only the durability of the paint but also several of its chief characteristics. Hence, it can be easily understood that the composition of the medium may vary in many ways, according to the purpose for which it is intended. Thus, one used for ordinary painting on walls is not also suitable for decorative painting, whilst, on the other hand, a medium for indoor work cannot be employed for outdoor painting.

Casein and its properties have been already described, and all that is now necessary to mention is that the dry casein must be converted into a soluble form before it can be used as a bind.

The usual solvents for this purpose are caustic potash or soda, borax, sodium bicarbonate, ammonia, potassium or sodium silicate (water-glass), slaked lime, cement, etc. Since it would hardly pay the painter to prepare casein from milk, it is preferable to use the commercial soluble casein. A simple solution of this is made by adding to 1 part of casein 0·3 to 0·4 part of strong ammonia, the solution being protected from putrefaction by means of a little carbolic acid. To convert these solutions into a usable medium they are treated with a little aqueous solution of resin, containing a small admixture of soap or wax. These latter substances are intended to surround the particles of pigment with a protective envelope against atmospheric influences. A medium prepared in this way is suitable for fine artistic painting indoors, enabling difficult pigments to be used and imparting to these a fine sheen.

Another casein medium, for which, however, the same claims cannot be advanced, is prepared by intimately mixing an alkaline solution of casein with diatomaceous earth (*kieselguhr*). This has the drawback of going dark-coloured in time, and of not being suitable for use with pigments like Berlin blue, though it can be usefully employed for coloured paints and rough ornamentation work.

On the other hand, compounds of fatty acids with alumina, and similar substances, are not advisable. Prof. Linke in his work on painters' colours says of these that though, when first dried, they form a dense, horny layer which repels water, the colours prepared with their aid soon alter in molecular structure on exposure to the air, and fall to powder, which is readily oxidised by atmospheric oxygen, chemically changed and rendered useless.

If dissociated casein is emulsified by oil, balsams or fats, together or separately, the resulting medium is distinguished by the property of leaving the natural tone of pigments unaltered. A casein medium of this kind, or one treated with resin, cannot, of course, be thinned down with water, but only with benzol, petroleum, turps or other volatile substances.

All the media hitherto described are more or less restricted to use for painting indoors. For outdoor use the casein must be incorporated with substances with which it forms insoluble compounds. The best known of these is slaked lime, which has been already mentioned in connection with cold water paints (*q.v.*). Cement also forms with casein a particularly resistant and effective binding medium, and a patent for making these media has been granted to Ant. Richard of Düsseldorf. According to this specification, casein, properly freed from fat, is mixed with an antiseptic, *e.g.*, formaldehyde, carbolic acid or the like, and then carefully ground along with water. The resulting thin liquid mass then receives an addition of cement proportionate to the amount of casein

present, the whole being well mixed and left to stand until the thicker, heavier constituents have settled down, whereupon the supernatant liquid, which forms the medium, is separated by decantation. This liquid has not the slightest action on the most sensitive body colours, and its binding power is unaffected by formaldehyde. It makes the colours thoroughly workable and imparts great durability, so that they can also be used for outdoor work, being able to stand the weather. These colours are also suitable for use in calico printing, since they are insoluble in water when once dry. The sedimental matter can be ground and used as a cover paint.

#### THE PREPARATION AND APPLICATION OF CASEIN PAINTS.

To prepare artists' colours with casein, all that is necessary is to take one of the media just described and mix it with the appropriate pigments. The pigments most suitable for *white* are: Baryta, white lead, China clay, Paris white, lithopone and zinc white; for *yellow*: cadmium yellow, chrome yellow, chrome, golden or pale ochre, Naples yellow, "satinober," Schütt yellow and Terra di Siena; for *red*: colcothar, carmine, chrome red, fast red, Indian red, madder lake, red lead, signal red, Terra pozzuoli, vermilion and vermilionette; for *brown*: asphaltum, Cassel brown, dark ochre, manganese brown, Terra di Siena, umber, Vandyck brown; for *blue*: Berlin blue, Bremen blue, indigo, cobalt blue, blue-green oxide and ultramarine; for *green*: chrome green, chrome oxide green, green earth, cobalt green, permanent green, Schweinfurt green and emerald green; for *black*: ivory black, bone black, lampblack and Paris black.

To prepare small quantities, the bind is mixed with the dry pigments on a plate or sheet of glass, or else they are ground with a muller or in a paint mill. The resulting paint is thinned down to a workable condition with boiled and recooled water at the time of use.



For making up large quantities at a time, the dry colours may be saturated with water and then mixed with the casein preparation. In the case of heavy pigments, this precaution is advisable, since the mixture easily gets too thin. The colours, however, stick better when mixed with the bind dry, the particles, in that event, absorbing the vehicle instead of water, and becoming more completely enveloped by the former.

Some of the organic colouring matters, *e.g.*, bone black, Cassel brown, etc., which form a good nutrient medium for mould fungi, require an addition of  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 per cent. of carbolic acid, 1 per mil. of formalin, or about 2 to 3 per cent. of salicylic acid solution, to the water; and this admixture does no harm in the case of other colours as well.

Although not essential, it is advisable to add a little lime to casein paints, especially when they are in paste form or for outdoor use.

If the amount of lime to be added is large, it is better not to make up a large stock of the paint, but only just enough for two to three days' consumption, since the insolubility of the paint is greater when the combination of lime and casein is fresh but is lessened when the mixture is stale.

The proportions of medium and pigment cannot be arbitrarily laid down, owing to the divergent requirements of the various pigments, and also because one and the same pigment varies in this respect, according to its origin and mode of preparation, apart from the fact that the power of the different casein media is a variable quantity.

Chalk and calcined earth pigments generally require a larger proportion of casein medium than lithopone, white lead, etc., whilst ochre and other raw earths usually need less. Light colours generally take less than dark ones, and inorganic pigments less than those of organic origin.

The proportion of medium also varies according to the

surface to be coated. For example, a larger proportion may generally be used on solid plaster and other solid substrata, such as metal, cement, oil paint, paper, canvas, etc., than on a surface that readily chips, such as plaster of Paris. In any case, if the paint is too strong it is very liable to cause the weak substratum to tear away, chip or peel off, especially when organic colours are used.

For painting on solid or prepared plaster, rough wood, etc., sufficient casein medium must be taken for the paint to stick to parchment paper when dry, so that it does not peel off when the paper is folded, and will stand the action of a strong jet of water at the end of about twenty-four hours.

To ascertain whether the right proportion of medium has been used, a small quantity of the paint is brushed on a sheet of writing or printing paper. If the paper is found to have shrunk much when the paint is dry, too much medium has been used.

As regards the handling of the brush, this is similar to distemper work, only that the brush must be more frequently cleansed with soap. A peculiar kind of curdling can be noticed when the paint in the can or brush has got too dry, and an attempt is made to reduce it with water. In such case the brush must be washed with soap and water and a fresh quantity of paint taken. Hence both paint and brush should be kept moist, and the colours on the palette frequently sprayed with water, the can kept covered up, and preferably fitted with an airtight lid.

In connection with the storing of casein paints the following points may be mentioned. In order to prevent the medium from drying, the can is either turned upside down, or else the surface of the paint covered with a layer of water. The paint, however, must not be thinned with this water, or a separation into layers may easily occur.

If the paint and medium separate in the can, they may

be remixed by stirring or shaking, but any skin that forms should be thrown away.

Casein paint that has partly or completely dried in the can is unfit for use, and it is therefore necessary to guard against this by covering the surface with water or closing the cans airtight.

If the medium becomes frozen in winter it should be slowly rewarmed over a water bath and then stirred up well.

The application of casein paints is performed in the following manner :—

After the ground has been suitably prepared, the outlines are sketched with crayon and coloured in, any excess of crayon being wiped off with a soft clean cloth.

The well-thinned paint is then laid on, as light in colour as possible. The oftener the coating is repeated the more attractive the effect produced, whereas, if the paint is too thick the effect is diminished and it readily tends to peel off, this being especially the case with dark colours containing an excess of the casein medium, though it may also occur when the other extreme is in question. This must be tried and modifications made accordingly before beginning the actual work of painting.

Both wide bristle brushes and fine long sable brushes are used. If, when the work is finished, some of the tones do not harmonise, they can be modified by working over the whole portion.

Thus, if one tone be too light and warm or too bright, it is worked over with ivory black alone, other alterations being made with deep colours, reduced to a thin paste with water and quickly laid on with the brush. In these operations the greatest cleanliness is necessary, both with the colours and with the cans and other utensils.

To paint frescoes on canvas, a rough canvas is coated with undiluted casein preparation and painted in quite wet

with colour that has merely been mixed with water without any casein medium. At the same time the under layer is kept well moistened with water throughout the entire process. If the dried paint is to be topped, the surface must be sprayed with the casein medium diluted 8- to 10-fold with water, and the paint applied as above.

In painting pictures on outside work, the casein medium prepared with the assistance of oil, balsams and fats or wax and resin is used. For the first coating on absorbent surfaces this is mixed with ordinary amber varnish which improves the drying and furnishes a handsome gloss.

If, on the other hand, drying is to be retarded in order to be able to work the colours together longer, then a little oil is added to the medium or the same is mixed with oil paint. Should the surface nevertheless get too dry, the true shade of the colours may be revealed by moistening with turps.

To coat the pictures with glossy varnish, as though they were oil paintings, a coating of glossy varnish or some other thick varnish must be brushed in, and when this is dry it should be covered by a second coat of varnish.

The varnish may be replaced by a coating of wax solution, the dried layer being heated to melting point in order to increase the durability and powers of resistance. The same purpose is also served by the paint soap and impregnating varnish, as well as the formaldehyde solutions already mentioned, though these can only be used on casein paintings that are free from fatty matters.

A fixative of this kind can be prepared by dissolving casein in methyl alcohol, or by treating an aqueous solution of casein and borax with absolute methyl alcohol free from acetone, the solution being left to stand for a long time and separated from the sediment.

According to Chialiva and Dupot, in their patent specifica-



tion, this fixative has the property of drying quickly and not too glossy.

Another weatherproof varnish for preserving paintings is obtained, according to the patent of Gebrüder Pilsz, by moistening collodion wool with methyl alcohol and then dissolving it in a solution of camphor in alcohol containing spirit of turpentine.

Formaldehyde, too, has latterly been recommended as an excellent means of rendering casein paintings insoluble in water (see Formolactin). If a dry picture, painted with casein paint, be exposed to the vapours of formaldehyde, the agglutinant in the paint (casein, glue or albumin) quickly becomes waterproof.

Before closing the present chapter, it should be stated that painting in the fresco and encaustic styles, as also *al secco* and *al sgraffito*, can be performed with casein paints. The methods elaborated by the Düsseldorf artist, Fritz Gerhardt, on the basis of prolonged investigation and chemical progress, are founded on a special preparation of the substratum and on the use of specially prepared colours. These include the fresco colours, marble colours (containing marble dust and casein), encaustic colours (prepared with wax and resin), the spike-oil colours and the universal colours. The Gobelin colours (imitation Gobelins) and flag colours, used for decorating flags, also belong to this class.

Finally, tempera painting can also be performed with casein paints. According to Beissier, a colour of this kind can be prepared by mixing—

Dry casein powder	.	.	.	.	.	.	7 parts.
Slaked lime	.	.	.	.	.	.	20 „
Covering mass (chalk, ochre)	.	.	.	.	.	.	100 „
Dextrin	.	.	.	.	.	.	8 „
Soap powder	.	.	.	.	.	.	8 „

and the necessary body colour.

The wall pictures in the Hall of Fame (Ruhmeshalle) in

Berlin were painted in lime tempera by Professor Geselschap. The medium, consisting of three parts by volume of fresh casein and one part of lime, was prepared fresh every day and ground along with the colours.

It is now generally admitted that paintings executed in casein colours will remain unaltered in tone for years and effectually resist atmospheric influences. They also exhibit extraordinary brightness, a fine velvety sheen, and clearness in the shadows. In contrast to other processes, it is possible with casein colours to paint the same surface over and over again, the effect gaining in beauty and solidity with each application. Finally, the paintings can be executed on any solid ground, and are easily cleaned when they get dirty. On account of these advantages casein painting is gaining ground, and a number of casein preparations for this purpose are on the market, though they cannot be discussed within the limits of the present work. In this connection a thoroughly scientific investigation of casein painting—such as has already been made in respect of oil and mineral paints—is, however, highly desirable.

## CHAPTER VI.

### CASEIN ADHESIVES AND PUTTIES.

THE employment of casein as an adhesive substance is of fairly ancient date, though it is only within the past ten to fifteen years that it has received any extensive attention, and been placed on the market under various names, such as casein glue, cold glue, cold-water glue, caseogum, gluten, etc., which are not merely suitable for industrial purposes, but also, and mainly, for replacing glue in the wood-working industries. Nevertheless, though many of these preparations comply with all the requirements of a glue substitute, and possess the additional advantages of being inodorous and ready for immediate use without previous soaking and heating, they have not made any great headway in practice. However, there is very little doubt that the prejudice against them will not continue to exist when their advantages are made fully known to consumers.

The raw material for these casein adhesives and putties is the fat-free casein obtained from curdled milk and brought into a liquid or pasty form by the aid of chemical agents like the alkaline earths, their salts, ammonia, tungstic salts and water. The products thus formed are ready for use; but analogous products in the form of powder can be prepared from casein that has been dried out of contact with air, then ground and brought into contact with the solvent reagents. In general the casein glue ready for use, *i.e.*, mixed with water, has been more successful than the dry

powder, but the latter is probably more convenient when intended for distant destinations.

The casein is prepared from milk in the usual manner, by the addition of acid bodies, acetic acid, tartaric acid, etc., the casein being precipitated along with a certain unavoidable small proportion of fat. Moreover, various acids are used for precipitating casein from skim milk; and this is one reason for the irregularities in the quality of commercial casein. On this point Bellamy reports that acetic acid, in the form of vinegar, has hitherto been chiefly used, and sulphuric acid occasionally. The casein must then be neutralised before it can be used further, for which purpose it is steeped in a solution of lime (lime-water) until it no longer reddens blue litmus paper. This treatment furnishes insoluble calcium acetate, which must be washed out before the casein can be converted into glue. For this reason Bellamy recommends that the casein should be thrown down by means of vegetable substances, whose coagulant properties are based on the presence of tannin, *e.g.*, cutch, China bark, oak bark and other barks, sumach, etc. Special success has attended the use of wild-cherry bark (*prunus virginiana*) for this purpose. The resulting casein does not require neutralising, and is easily worked up, besides being more uniform in quality. At the same time, the quantity of the precipitant is immaterial, since any excess remains in solution and therefore does not stick to the casein when this is boiled. Whatever method of preparation is adopted, it is always advisable to add to the casein a little sodium arsenate,  $\text{Na}_2\text{HAsO}_4$ , or some other salt of arsenic, since this increases the adhesive power and forms a kind of chemical mordant.

Another method of preparing casein specially for use as an adhesive is the following. Milk is left to stand in a cool place and the cream carefully skimmed off, this being repeated as long as any cream continues to rise, the milk being



afterwards warmed to make it curdle. To test whether all the casein has been precipitated by the lactic acid of the milk, a sample of the separated liquid is treated with a little hydrochloric acid; if a precipitate is formed there is still some casein in solution, and this should be thrown down by an addition of 1 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, without waiting any longer for it to curdle. The curd is next pressed and washed with soft water until the washings are free from all trace of acid. To remove the final particles of fat the curd is boiled up with water and spread on a filter cloth.

When dry the curd is pressed and dried, first at a moderate temperature, then with an increased application of heat, and finally in a partial vacuum if necessary. In this way it can be obtained either in the form of fine granules or as a horny shrunken mass. In either case it will keep indefinitely, but is liable to insect ravages, and especially to those of larvæ.

#### CASEIN GLUE IN PLATES OR FLAKES.

One hundred and fifty parts of purified dry casein are mixed with 75 parts of a solution of sodium tungstate and well stirred. The mass is then thickened at a moderate temperature in a jacketed enamelled pan (or on the water bath), *i.e.*, is concentrated as far as possible, and is then cast into moulds or poured out on a sheet of glass or marble plate. If moulded it can be cut into flat slabs like glue and dried on trays; but in the other case it forms a more or less solid mass (according to the percentage of water present), which readily dissolves in hot water.

#### BOLDER'S LIQUID CASEIN GLUE.

H. Bolder, of Charlottenburg, prepares a glue possessing the same adhesive properties as ordinary joiner's glue, but in a liquid form, which is ready for use without warming and

is capable of resisting moisture, by treating dry casein with a dilute solution of borax, or with sufficient ammonia to produce a faintly alkaline reaction. This preparation may be used or mixed with liquid starch in any proportion.

#### CROSSPIETSCH'S ADHESIVE.

A mixture of casein, castor oil and linseed oil, thickened by heat, is treated with alum, sugar-candy and dextrin, and heated over again until a homogeneous pap is formed, which is then treated with water-glass.

#### JEROMIN'S CASEIN ADHESIVE.

According to German patent 154,289, lime, water-glass and casein are mixed together and applied to the wood to be glued, left to dry and afterwards heated, with application of pressure, to make a waterproof joint. This method of mixing the three ingredients direct has the disadvantage that the casein is not fully dissociated; and it is found that the adhesive is more powerful when the casein has been treated with lime water before mixing it with the water-glass and lime.

The method of treating casein with alkalis is not new, and a process of this kind is described in German patent 116,355, though the purpose of the treatment in that instance is a different one, namely, the production of a viscous solution of casein. With this object the casein is treated with sufficient alkali to produce a faintly alkaline reaction, that is to say, the amount of alkali added is in excess of that necessary to form the neutral caseate. This implies that the casein passes into solution and is no longer in the colloidal form, which solution, however, is incapable of fulfilling the purpose for which it is intended, namely, that of an adhesive and filler. To overcome this drawback the casein is reconverted into the colloidal state by means of tannin, so that the final product is improved in respect of adhesive and filling power.

Hence the method consists in first preparing a non-adhesive solution and then converting it into an adhesive by partial precipitation of the casein.

On the other hand, Jeromin proposes to effect the same result in a more direct manner. The dissociation and solution of the casein by alkalis is avoided, lime water being used to make the casein swell up. In certain circumstances the whole of the lime can be added at once ; but this is attended with the aforesaid drawback of unequal distribution of the casein, a contingency that is overcome in the present case by the preliminary swelling of the casein in a small quantity of lime water. It must not be forgotten that in the subjoined recipe the quantity of lime water mentioned does not contain enough lime to form a saturated casein compound, though it is sufficient to cause swelling and thus prepare for the formation of a homogeneous mass through the subsequent mixing and combination with the added lime.

The method is performed as follows :—

Twelve and a half pounds of ground casein powder are mixed with a threefold quantity of clear lime water, stirred up in the same and left to settle for about forty-eight hours. When the casein has swollen up under this treatment, the mass, weighing about 50 lb., is mixed with  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of lime and 25 lb. of water, the whole being kept well stirred for about twenty minutes, after which  $17\frac{1}{2}$  lb. of water-glass are stirred in. When this mass has stood for a while it may be further diluted if necessary.

In this manner a very uniform and effective adhesive is obtained, one far superior to that furnished by the process described in the German patent 60,156.

The whole of the casein is acted upon and no uninfluenced particles are left in the mass, as hitherto, to be a source of weakness and diminish the waterproof properties of the adhesive under the action of heat and pressure later on, owing

to their tendency to absorb moisture, to decompose or to putrefy.

### HALL'S CASEIN GLUE.

A powerful fireproof glue is obtained, according to W. A. Hall, by mixing—

50 to 60 parts by weight of dry casein,			
20	„	„	sodium phosphate,
10	„	„	sodium sulphite, and
20 to 30	„	„	dry lime, slaked or burned.

In another of Hall's recipes an adhesive is prepared by modifying starch under the influence of high temperatures, and stirring this product up with casein until the whole is nearly or quite absorbed by the particles of casein, a dissolved alkali being added during stirring. By the intimate admixture of the several ingredients a very useful adhesive is obtained.

Still another process consists in combining certain proportions of casein, ammonia and formaldehyde to form a mass suitable for sizing paper, straw, etc.

### WATERPROOF GLUE.

A waterproof glue or putty is obtained by mixing an albuminoid substance like casein, albumin, etc., with a caustic alkali (potash, soda or lime) or a carbonate, silicate, borate or phosphate of soda or potash. The inventor states that when an excess of alkali is present the product soon becomes insoluble in water at the ordinary temperature. On the other hand, when the albuminoid substance is in excess the conversion proceeds slowly, but is accelerated by warmth. In using the latter preparation, the surfaces to be joined are coated with the mixture, left to dry, and then pressed together between hot rollers. Inert substances may be added to the mixture.



## LIQUID CASEIN GLUE.

To prepare a stable casein glue, which will dry or set immediately and perfectly resist moisture and the influence of weather, 10 parts by weight of fresh curd are mixed with 6 parts of water to a thick pap, warmed to 40° C. and then stirred with a sufficiency of ammonia until the casein is fully precipitated. This furnishes pure casein, and the whey can be eliminated by draining, pressure or centrifugalising. The resulting casein is washed by spreading it out on a stretched cloth and pouring water over it.

The product is next mixed with  $\frac{3}{4}$  to 1 part by weight of strong ammonia solution in a pan and heated to 30° to 40° C., whereby it is converted into a liquid glue, which can be diluted with about 80 per cent. of water and preserved by an addition of carbolic acid or thymol.

To make a quick-setting joint with this preparation, it is laid on with a brush and left to dry, the surfaces being afterwards brushed over with milk (or thin cream) of lime and pressed together. The calcium of the milk of lime combines in the joint with the casein of the glue, ammonia being liberated, and the resulting calcium caseate fixes the surfaces so tightly that the joined article can be worked five minutes afterwards.

The ammonia can of course be replaced by caustic potash, caustic soda or any other alkali, but the presence of such alkalis makes the glue more sensitive to moisture.

## POWDERED CASEIN GLUE.

Dried, purified casein, 15 to 20 parts by weight, is ground to fine meal in a pulveriser, and then incorporated, in a sifting and mixing machine, with 1 to 4 parts of ground borax or 2 to 8 parts of sodium bicarbonate, great care being bestowed on proper mixing.

## CASEIN AND BORAX GLUE.

This is a solution of casein in a saturated solution of borax. It has a transparent, gelatinous appearance, and when dried forms a yellowish-white, somewhat brittle mass, which is readily soluble in water, has high adhesive properties and is suitable for cabinetmakers' use. It is prepared by setting milk to curdle in a warm place, the completeness of the operation being tested with hydrochloric acid, 1 per cent. of which is added to the milk if the test indicates that casein still remains in solution. The purification and drying of the casein are performed in the manner already described at the beginning of the present chapter. For use the necessary quantity is placed in a suitable vessel and mixed with levigated chalk, slaked lime, water-glass and borax solution, an excellent adhesive being thus obtained.

According to another report, this product is prepared as follows. Milk is heated with a little tartaric acid, or when large quantities are to be produced, is curdled in the ordinary way as for cheesemaking. The resulting curd, in a still moist condition, is sprinkled with a solution of 6 parts of borax in 100 parts of water, and gently warmed and stirred, the casein being thereby dissolved. The clear solution is a strong adhesive, cheap and durable, and can be used to replace gum-arabic in all cases where dextrin would be unsuitable.

## SOLID CASEIN ADHESIVE.

The mass, consisting of a mixture of alkali tannate, casein and water, is said to possess good adhesive properties. In the dried state it forms a somewhat hard and rather elastic mass, which is insoluble in water and various other liquids. It is prepared by pouring a cold or warm solution of tannic acid (bark extract) into a solution of milk

of lime until precipitation ceases and the filtrate has an alkaline reaction. The precipitate is separated, and is dried at the ordinary temperature in a current of air. This calcium tannate is powdered and mixed with lime, unless an excess of this base is present already, the whole being next ground along with casein powder, sifted and stirred up with a sufficient quantity of water. According to the desired character and properties of the finished product, from 1 to 10 parts of casein are taken to each part of tannate. Casein is not precipitated on adding water, but the mixture forms a strongly adhesive mucilage which, when dry, becomes hard, tough, elastic and insoluble in water, petroleum, carbon disulphide and other liquids.

#### CASEIN GLUE FOR CARDBOARD BOXES.

Forty-five parts of dry casein powder are dissolved by degrees in 32 parts of water by continued stirring,  $\frac{1}{2}$  part of borax and rather more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  part of strong ammonia being added to the mixture, which is next warmed up to near boiling for some time, the mass being still kept stirred, and finally cooled. If the glue is too thick, it may be thinned down with a little ammonia. A good casein glue can also be prepared from casein powder, magnesium chloride and gelatinised starch.

#### CASEIN SOLUTION.

A solution, patented by the Casein Company of America, is prepared by precipitating casein with hydrochloric acid, and dissolving 1 part of the precipitate in 1 to 3 parts of water with an addition of 0.1 to 0.12 part of trisodium phosphate.

A caseous mass, suitable for use as a bind or adhesive, is obtained by mixing a solution of modified starch with granular casein, the mixture being stirred rapidly until the

starch is absorbed by the particles of casein. The mass is rendered alkaline during the process by adding a solution of alkali.

#### RENKEN'S METHOD OF USING GLUE.

One side of the article to be glued is treated with formaldehyde, the other coated with casein putty, and the two pressed together. Bottle labels and the like are moistened with formaldehyde, dried and coated with casein glue.

#### GLUE POWDER.

To prepare glue powder, casein is mixed with powdered slaked lime in suitable proportions, the mixture being stirred up with water for use. A very good cement or bind is obtained by mixing dry casein with levigated chalk, powdered slaked lime and a solution of sodium silicate or borax.

#### CASEIN GLUE FOR MATCH-MAKING.

Casein forms a good substitute for glue or dextrin in match-making, for the following reasons: It can be dissolved without heat, is neither hygroscopic nor inflammable, and can also be made waterproof by suitable treatment.

The preparation of the solution is simplified by using sodium caseate or water-soluble casein instead of the variety soluble in alkali. Water is heated to near boiling (190° F.), and the casein powder is shaken in and stirred.

#### LEHNER'S CASEIN PUTTIES.

##### 1.

Fresh curd is boiled with water until it has dissolved to a ropy mass, and slaked lime and finely sifted wood ashes are stirred into the solution. The proportions are:—

Curd . . . . .	100 parts.
Water . . . . .	200 „
Slaked lime . . . . .	25 „
Wood ashes . . . . .	20 „



## 2.

Another putty, suitable for stopping large holes in masonry or for pointing joints in brickwork, is compounded of :—

Casein . . . . .	12 parts.
Slaked lime . . . . .	50 „
Sea sand . . . . .	50 „

3. *Casein Bind for Meerschaum.*

Casein is dissolved in alkali silicate, stirred quickly with finely-powdered calcined magnesia and used at once, since it very soon hardens. If meerschaum powder be added along with the magnesia, the resulting mass closely resembles real meerschaum, and can be used for making a substitute for same. The meerschaum powder is obtained by pulverising and sifting the waste turnings and shavings of real meerschaum.

4. *Casein Putty of Good Keeping Power.*

Casein . . . . .	200 parts.
Quick-lime . . . . .	40 „
Camphor . . . . .	1 „

These ingredients are powdered separately, intimately mixed, and packed in tightly closed glass vessels. For use, the powder is stirred up quickly with the necessary quantity of water and used at once.

5. *Casein Cement for Porcelain.*

Casein dissolves readily in alkali silicate, and the solution forms one of the best possible cements for porcelain. It is prepared by shaking up 1 part of fresh casein with 3 parts of water-glass in a bottle until dissolved.

6. *Casein Cement for Glass.*

Skim-milk cheese . . . . .	100 parts.
Water . . . . .	50 „
Slaked lime . . . . .	20 „

The cheese is separated from the rind, cut up into small pieces, and rubbed down with water until a ropy, uniform mass is produced, into which the slaked lime is stirred as quickly as possible, the mass being used as soon as made. It will not only stick glass firmly to glass, but can also be used for fastening metal on glass, porcelain and meerschaum (pipe mounts).

### 7. *Casein Cement for Metals.*

Levigated quartz sand	.	.	.	.	.	10 parts.
Casein .	.	.	.	.	.	8 „

mixed with sufficient water to make a cream.

### 8. *Casein and Borax Cement.*

(a) Ten parts of casein and 5 of borax are stirred with water to a thick milk, and used as glue. The mixture may also be used as an adhesive for the labels of wine bottles, since it does not grow mouldy or loosen in damp cellars.

(b) If the above cement be coated over several times with gallnut extract when dry, it becomes waterproof, owing to the formation of an insoluble compound between the casein and the tannin.

Very strong waterproof fabrics, similar to those treated with rubber solution, can be obtained by dipping closely-woven cloth in a solution of casein and borax, allowing it to dry, and then dipping it in a solution of gallnuts.

(c) Borax is boiled in water, and the cold solution is poured over freshly precipitated casein, which it thereby dissolves to a clear, thick and strongly adhesive mass that will keep indefinitely without decomposing.

This preparation applied to paper, leather, linen or cotton cloth forms a handsome, glossy coating, and on this account it is largely used as a varnish for cardboard boxes or leather fancy goods.

9. *Casein and Water-glass Cement for Glass and Porcelain.*

Casein, 10 parts, and water-glass, 60 parts, are mixed together. It is applied as quickly as possible, the cemented articles being exposed to the air to dry.

10. *Casein-Soda Cement.*

Casein is precipitated from milk with vinegar, then washed and redissolved in a minimum quantity of caustic soda solution, the preparation being stored in well-closed bottles.

## WASHABLE CEMENT FOR DEAL BOARDS.

Casein . . . . .	18 oz.
Water . . . . .	7 pints.
Ammonia . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ "
Quick-lime . . . . .	9 oz.

## WENK'S CASEIN CEMENT.

The casein is not used direct, but is first treated, so that after the addition of some resinifying substance (*e.g.*, tannin), it acquires superior properties to those of cements prepared in the usual way. The casein is rendered slightly alkaline with soda or potash, and then heated for about twenty-four hours at a temperature of about 140° F. It is next mixed with lime or water-glass, and finally with some material containing tannin, in order to ensure more rapid resinification. The best results are obtained when the casein has been prepared at the above-named temperature; otherwise, it behaves less favourably. The tannin solutions to use are preferably about 1 per cent. of gallic acid, cutch, quercitannic acid or similar substances. The slaked lime, water-glass, etc., which may be used in varying proportions, furnish the requisite inorganic foundation for the organic mixture to be resinified. The finished preparation may be used for gluing wood in the ordinary way.

## CASEIN AND LIME CEMENT.

The rind is removed from old, skim-milk cheese, and the mass is rubbed with water and warmed until it furnishes a viscid mass like turpentine. This mixture is next incorporated to a plastic mass with a sufficient amount of powdered, slaked lime, in a warm mortar. An alternative method is to take skim-milk curd, press out the whey, and mix the rest with lime as in the other case. The cement must be used at once as it soon hardens. The curd will not take up more than one-fourth its own weight of lime. If larger quantities are needed, a little fine sand or brickdust, previously made up into a paste with the lime and a little water, may be used to replace part of the curd. When the cement is to be used in very fine joints, it is preferable to use a solution of carbonate of potash as the solvent, and evaporate any superfluous water, or to mix the fresh curd with the same salt. This cement is highly suitable for mending glass or porcelain.

## “PITCH BARM.”

This is a cement capable of numerous applications, and is made by mixing fresh curd with water-glass and powdered caustic lime. The curd must be well pressed to expel the water and is then incorporated with the water-glass, the lime being stirred in so as to form a paste just before use. It hardens quickly.

## CASEIN STOPPING.

This is used for stopping cracks and joints in wood, stone and brickwork, and is prepared by mixing  $1\frac{1}{2}$  parts of water-soluble casein, 8 of levigated chalk, 2 of calcined magnesia and 2 parts of fine sawdust. Just before use the mass is stirred to a pulp with water. It penetrates the cracks, hardens quickly, smoothens nicely and does not shrink.



## CASEIN CEMENT FOR STONE.

Fresh curd, pressed to expel the whey, is kneaded in warm water with about one-fourth its weight of powdered slaked lime, to form a soft, plastic mass which must be used immediately as it hardens quickly. To give the cement more body—which is desirable for use with stone—the lime should have been mixed beforehand with about its own weight of fine sand or brickdust, the mass being made up to a stiff mortar with water before adding the curd. The surfaces to be cemented must be well moistened.

Another excellent cement for this purpose, that sets slowly, becomes very hard and answers admirably for protecting joints in stonework from water, alkalis, etc., consists of fine cement mixed to a stiff paste with one-fourth its own weight of fine brickdust, and with moistened curd.

A good cement for wood is made of equal quantities of powdered quick-lime, dry curd and albumin, mixed together by stirring.

## CHAPTER VII.

### THE PREPARATION OF PLASTIC MASSES FROM CASEIN.

LIKE all substances possessing strong adhesive properties, casein is specially adapted for the preparation of plastic masses, which can be moulded, either in admixture with organic substances like sawdust, wood meal, paper, etc., or alone in the form of paste or a more or less dry powder, and set hard when dry. Casein mixed with lime or other alkaline material can be converted, by the addition of a little water, into a plastic mass which, though very gradually, dries in the air to a transparent mass as hard as bone, and can be stained any colour. In this condition it can be turned in the lathe or worked with any other cutting tool. When plastic casein is mixed with other substances, such as organic or finely powdered inorganic materials, the resulting masses are endowed with the property of drying quickly, especially under the influence of warmth. Care must, however, be taken in the drying process, owing to the fact that all masses containing much water shrink and easily crack while drying.

The adhesive properties of casein have already met with extensive industrial application. Great success has attended, for example, the attempts made to render celluloid uninflam-mable by admixtures of casein ; and special mention will be made later of the newest celluloid substitute, galalith. This affords an instance of how modern ingenuity has enabled a raw material, hitherto of but slight use technically, to become of great industrial utility.

## IMITATION IVORY.

Milk curd, partly or wholly freed from its aqueous and fatty constituents and broken up into small lumps, is kneaded for about fifteen minutes in nearly boiling water. This treatment causes the separation of fatty or granular impurities, and leaves the casein in an almost perfectly pure state as a tough, sticky mass. Care must, however, be taken not to prolong the kneading beyond the proper stage, or the curd will be too soft and pappy. The product may then be pressed out into flat cakes or blocks of any desired shape.

The casein prepared in this way can be mixed with pigments or other materials, such as ivory dust, ground bone or ground porcelain, according to the character of the article it is intended to imitate. The prepared casein is stirred for about ten minutes in hot water, which causes it to soften; and it can then be incorporated with the necessary colouring matter or other ingredients, and the resulting plastic mass cast into moulds.

The curd, freed from whey, may also be kneaded in its own water of saturation, with a little more if necessary, at a temperature approaching the boiling point. For this purpose, the curd should be broken into small pieces, this treatment facilitating the removal of fatty and other extraneous matter. By this means, the curd can be worked at a lower temperature and far more cheaply than by the first-named method, and also furnishes a tougher quality of casein. The colouring matters or other admixtures can be incorporated as soon as the fat has been washed out and the mass has been worked, thus saving a special mixing process. The temperature to which the curd containing the water of saturation is exposed, is about 120° to 175° F., according to the character of the curd. It is then worked or kneaded for about fifteen minutes, with or without the addition of a little

more water, according to requirements, the water of saturation usually sufficing to make the mass plastic. The product is a tough, sticky mass which can be pressed into flat cakes or any other suitable shape. The preparation is specially adapted for various decorative or useful articles ; and the further treatment may consist in rolling, pressing, moulding or any other suitable process.

#### LILIENTHAL'S PLASTIC MASS.

The ingredients of this preparation consist of caustic strontia, powdered marble or limestone and casein, the following proportions being recommended : powdered marble or limestone, 3 to 4 parts ; caustic strontia, 1 part ; and a quantity of pressed casein equal to about one-sixth of the other two substances. They are mixed together in any suitable mixer or stirrer, the strontia and casein combining to form a very firm bind, which imparts great hardness and strength to the articles made from the mixture. The mass is formed into the desired shape by moulding under heavy pressure.

#### JUNG, BRECHER & KITTEL'S INSULATING PREPARATION.

This preparation is made of a mixture of casein and vegetable oils, which latter may be either in a natural state or sulphonated. The low price of rape oil, linseed oil and castor oil renders them specially suitable for the purpose. The casein may be prepared in any suitable way, and is used either in the state of dry powder, the pressed damp condition, or dissolved in alkali, borax or other solvent. In the two former cases the oil is kneaded in until a homogeneous, gelatinous mass is formed, but when dissolved casein is used the liquid is evaporated until a kneadable mass is formed, and this is mixed with the oil.

The preparation may then be worked up alone or in ad-



mixture with caoutchouc or resin, to form a homogeneous mass, and when resin is used the product may serve as a rubber substitute. It may be further incorporated with other ingredients used in the rubber industry, such as litharge, chalk, lime, pitch or other colouring material. The final product is employed in the manufacture of imitation rubber goods by moulding and drying, and it may also be vulcanised with sulphur, no matter whether raw or sulphonated oil has been used.

#### ANTI-RADIATION AND ANTI-CORROSIVE COMPOSITION.

To prevent loss of heat by radiation in steam pipes, these conduits may be coated with one or two layers of a mixture of 10 parts of casein and 25 parts of Portland cement and water-glass, the whole being stirred together and thinned down to a workable consistency with water. Asbestos may also form part of the composition, or the pipes may be wrapped with asbestos rope before the second coating has dried. On account of its constitution and consistency, the composition may be regarded as a plastic mass rather than a paint.

#### DICKMANN'S COVERING FOR FLOORS AND WALLS.

Paper, peat or other vegetable or animal fibres, or cellulose, asbestos and the like, may be rolled into sheets and mixed to a pulp or sheets with oxidised linseed oil, metallic oxides, casein dissolved in ammonia, alum, iron sulphate, water-glass, resins, paraffin, wax, salt, glue, gelatine, potassium chromate, rubber, flour, ammonium cuproxide, formaldehyde, or mixtures of two or more of these substances. The under side of the sheet may be fitted with projections; or holes or hollow cavities or cells can be arranged inside the sheet. These spaces may be filled with peat, sawdust, rubber, cork, linoleum, leather, or other sound-deadening material that is elastic and non-conducting; or compressed-air chambers may

be provided within the material. Wall coverings of this kind may be decorated in any suitable way on the outer face.

#### IMITATION LINOLEUM.

Albumin, 50 to 80 parts; casein, 50; ground cork or leather scraps, 20 to 40; flowers of sulphur, 2 to 4; and caustic soda lye, 15 to 16 parts, are intimately mixed together, and the mass can be rolled into strips. The main components are alkali albuminate and alkali caseate.

#### IMITATION LEATHER.

Imitation leather may be prepared with casein by preparing a felted mass of vegetable fibres and animal wool; and this felt is impregnated with a mixture of linseed oil, resin, turpentine, wax, glycerine, glue and casein, together with small quantities of borax and potassium bichromate, the liquid having been gently warmed before use. After impregnation the felt is partly dried, and is then treated with a solution of aluminium acetate, followed by completing the drying process, cleaning and pressing between warm rollers. The product will be a very good imitation of leather.

#### IMITATION BONE.

Clean, white bones or bone chippings are finely ground and mixed to a stiff pulp with casein solution, which is then dried in iron moulds at 130° to 140° F. The mass is next roughly ground, moistened and dried under heavy pressure and at a high temperature in moulds. Steam presses are used, the size and working pressure varying with the dimensions of the plates to be produced; and two men are required, one to look after the engine, the other in charge of the press. The metal moulds in which the plates are formed are heated in the press by means of the bed and pressing head, which are traversed by channels containing gas jets.

By regulating the gas flames the heating can be adjusted and kept uniform ; on no account should the metal be heated to redness. The temperature is regulated by the melting point of metallic alloys. The mould and cover are placed empty in the press and heated ; and the interior of the mould being carefully greased or oiled, the necessary quantity of material is inserted, the cover put on and the pressure gradually applied. The press attendant requires to be skilled, in order to judge correctly when to stop pressing and take the plate out of the mould. When sufficiently pressed, the plates are removed into a moderately warm room to complete the drying.

The finished mass is very hard ; so much so that it will not break when thrown down on a stone floor. It can be turned in the lathe, like real bone, takes a beautiful polish, and is capable of numerous applications.

#### PLASTIC MASS OF KERATIN AND CASEIN.

Substances containing keratin are dissolved in alkalis or alkali sulphides, along with casein, colouring matters, and the like. The keratin is thrown down from the solution by mineral acids and tannic acid, and the resulting mass is put into moulds, pressed and dried.

#### INSULATING MASS.

This mass consists of a mixture of skim-milk casein and a solution of resins (preferably mastic or sandarach, with a little amber) in alcohol or turps (German patent, 106,466).

#### PLASTIC CASEIN MASSES.

Dissolved casein is mixed with a solution of resin, the mixture being incorporated with vegetable or mineral ingredients, and treated with formalin to coagulate the casein. This mass, whilst still in a plastic state, may be spread on a

network of wire, rushes or straw, so as to obtain a light, unbreakable, insulating material.

According to another process, milk is warmed to about 140° F., treated with a considerable addition of borax, and heated further to about 190° F. in presence of barium chloride or other mineral precipitant of casein. The washed precipitate is pressed and ground with an addition of acetic acid, soda or other solvent, and the resulting mass is put into a steam-heated press. The product is similar to bone or celluloid.

### HORNY CASEIN MASS.

According to P. Horn, dried casein is dissolved in dilute caustic potash, and heated along with a quantity of sulphur at least equal to the amount of alkali taken. The casein, potash and sulphur are thereby dissolved to a clear liquid, which is concentrated to the thickness of syrup, moulded and dried, or made suitable for various technical purposes by the addition of loading ingredients, driers or hardening preparations. For example, a very elastic mass is obtained from the following proportions:—

Water	.	.	.	.	.	.	200 parts by weight.
Casein	.	.	.	.	.	.	100    „    „
Potash	.	.	.	.	.	.	5 to 10    „    „
Sulphur	.	.	.	.	.	.	10 to 30    „    „

The elasticity increases with the proportion of sulphur taken. The final product may be hardened by adding lead hydroxide, zinc hydroxide and potassium or sodium silicate, whilst wood, cork, sand or emery may be added to increase the drying properties, or as fillers.

In another recipe, 100 parts of skim milk are treated with soda or potash, together with  $\frac{1}{500}$  of chemically pure soda. The precipitated casein is separated from the mass, and set aside for one to three days to ferment, whereupon it is pressed, and dried at 140° F. The mass is powdered, and



70 parts of it are mixed with 28 of bone meal, gypsum, kaolin, or graphite, together with 2 parts of stearin, paraffin, wax, etc., and colouring matter if necessary. The whole is made into a pulp and warmed at  $190^{\circ}$  F., moulded and pressed, the finished product being dusted over with calcined magnesia, immersed in water for two days, and finally dried at  $68^{\circ}$  F.

#### PLASTIC MASS FROM CELLULOID.

The inflammability of celluloid can be diminished by the addition of incombustible substances, of which casein is one; and this application of casein has already been repeatedly advocated and employed.

According to Dunham, a product resembling celluloid can be obtained by mixing solutions of casein and nitrocellulose in glacial acetic acid or other known solvents, with camphor or the like material used in the manufacture of celluloid.

To obtain a homogeneous compound of nitrocellulose and casein, Barnodai makes casein into a plastic mass with an aqueous solution of borax or other casein solvent, removes the excess of water, dips the mass in alcohol in order to displace merely a portion of the water absorbed by the casein, eliminates the excess of liquid, and then introduces into the mass a quantity of elastic nitrocellulose, the whole being kneaded until homogeneous.

According to the Compagnie Française à Celluloïd, a cheap substitute for celluloid is obtained by introducing casein into the composition from which celluloid is prepared. One hundred parts of casein are moistened with a solution of 5 parts of urea in 50 parts of denatured alcohol, and mixed, after forty-eight hours, with nitrocellulose and camphor moistened with alcohol. After another forty-eight hours the mass is treated in the same way as celluloid paste, and it is

advisable to afterwards treat it with formaldehyde to render the casein insoluble.

### CASEIN-CELLULOSE COMPOSITION.

A composition suitable for many purposes and forming an excellent electrical insulator and waterproof mass when subjected to heavy pressure, can be prepared from cellulose and an ammoniacal solution of casein. If necessary the mass may be incorporated with repulped paper and some mineral substance like magnesia, talc, kieselguhr and some body colour. The casein may be replaced by pressed curd, and the waste paper by alkali cellulose. In the latter event, the alkali in the cellulose dissolves the casein, which thereupon penetrates into the cellulose and furnishes a homogeneous mass which can be incorporated with vegetable fibres or powdered mineral substances and coloured with pigments. The mass may be made more impervious to water by mixing with it a solution of ferrous sulphate or copper sulphate, or an alkaline solution of shellac, mixing the whole well and pressing it in metal moulds. The finished articles can be worked in the same way as wood.

### FIREPROOF CELLULOSE SUBSTITUTE.

A hard, glossy and fireproof substance is obtained by the following recipe: A solution of 200 parts of casein in 50 parts of strong ammonia and 400 of water, is mixed with:—

Quick-lime	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	240 parts.
Aluminium acetate	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	150 „
Alum	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	50 „
Gypsum	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	1,200 „

followed by 100 parts of linseed oil.

The mass is kneaded until perfectly homogeneous, and is then rolled into sheets of any desired thickness. These are dried and pressed in hot metal moulds, or else are reduced to powder, filled into moulds and exposed to heavy

pressure. The moulded articles are dipped into a bath of 10 parts of phosphoric acid and 100 of water, and are afterwards dried, polished and varnished with a solution of shellac, consisting of 3 parts of shellac, 1 of borax and 20 of boiling water.

According to another recipe, plastic articles of all kinds, and especially decorations and ornaments of paper, can be made to appear as though made of plaster of Paris, stamped sheet metal or carved wood. Two press moulds are used: one positive, the other negative, and both fitting accurately in one another. A few sheets of ordinary paper, previously moistened, are laid in the negative mould and worked with the finger tips so as to fill up all the depressions in the mould. Casein glue is applied to each sheet before the next is put in; and when a sufficient thickness has been attained (14 to 15 pieces of ordinary packing paper are generally enough), the positive mould is placed in position and the whole subjected to heavy pressure in a press. By this means all the edges, projections and depressions of the negative mould are forced into the wet paper, and when the latter is taken out of the mould it will be found that all the outlines and other details of the negative mould have been sharply reproduced on the surface. The paper is then dried, and at the same time exposed to the action of formaldehyde vapour. Finally, the ragged edges are trimmed, and the finished article can be coloured or gilded as required.

#### NITROCELLULOSE AND CASEIN COMPOSITION.

To prepare a celluloid composition from nitrocellulose and casein, according to the patented process of the Casein Company, New York, these two substances are dissolved separately in suitable solvents, *e.g.*, glacial acetic acid, and mixed together, or else a solution of cellulose in any suitable medium is mixed with a solution of nitrocellulose and

camphor or other ingredients which may be diluted with alcohol. The mixing of the casein with the nitrocellulose may also take place before dilution.

#### FRANQUET'S CELLULOID SUBSTITUTE.

Celluloid and xylonite, both of which are used to make imitation tortoiseshell, ivory, horn, etc., are expensive, and the casein products, such as lactite and lactoite, are frequently brittle, or become so in time. According to Franquet, however, the product obtained by mixing casein with the substance obtained from nitrocellulose and camphor, possesses the same properties as celluloid, and is much cheaper. It is flexible, very hard, without being brittle, and is impervious to water; it can also be sawn, turned, filed and carved. When heated to 160° to 190° F. it becomes very plastic and can be moulded.

To obtain a homogeneous compound of nitrocellulose and casein, the latter is formed into a plastic mass with one of its solvents, *e.g.*, an aqueous solution of borax; the excess of water is removed, the mass is dipped in alcohol, to extract a portion of the water absorbed by the casein, the excess of liquid is removed from the mass, and the latter is then kneaded along with plastic nitrocellulose until homogeneous.

When camphor is used, 100 parts of nitrocellulose are treated with 40 to 50 parts of camphor dissolved in 50 to 60 parts of 95 to 96 per cent. alcohol. The casein is rendered plastic in the following manner. The casein is immersed for twenty-four to forty hours in a 5 per cent. aqueous solution of borax, or other casein solvent, *e.g.*, sodium carbonate. It is next dried, dipped in alcohol, acetone, sulphuric ether or acetic acid, dried for several hours or pressed, and mixed with the nitrocellulose. Another method is to dip the casein for twenty-four to forty-eight hours in borax solution, or in some other casein solvent containing 3 to 4 parts of alcohol



or other solvent of nitrocellulose. The casein and nitrocellulose products are afterwards rolled together for three to four hours between rollers, and thus furnish a transparent or translucent and perfectly homogeneous mass, which can be drawn out into sheets 2 to 4 inches thick. These sheets are pressed together, as in making celluloid, the block being thereupon cut into plates of the desired thickness. Mineral and other substances can be easily added to the mass. According to an additional patent (23rd Feb., 1902) caseates are added to nitrocellulose that has been treated with alcoholic camphor, the mixture being then treated in the same way as celluloid.

According to the master patent (German patent, 138,783), a mass resembling celluloid is obtained by adding casein to ordinary celluloid; and pure casein may be replaced, for this purpose, by a compound of casein with a metallic oxide. For a transparent product, aluminium caseate is the most suitable adjunct; zinc or magnesium caseate for a white product, and the corresponding compound of manganese, iron, copper or nickel for coloured articles. The caseate must be repeatedly and carefully washed, from 1 to 5 per cent. of borax being added towards the end of the process, to make the mass more plastic and facilitate mixing with the other ingredients.

#### GALALITH.

Galalith is the name given to a plastic mass which finds a large number of practical applications in a variety of forms and colours. Its preparation is based on the production of a clear, non-milky casein, first proposed in the German patent 115,681, granted, under date 15th July, 1899, to Adolf Spitteler of Prien, Upper Bavaria.

The specification of this patent states that the cheap, imperfectly purified, commercial varieties of casein furnish turbid solutions, which in turn yield products that are only

translucent, not transparent. True, according to Lundberg, casein itself, when in the form of faintly alkaline solutions, is soon transformed into alkali albuminate; nevertheless, these solutions will remain milky, both when heated and when kept for days, if impure casein has been used; neither can they be clarified by repeated filtration. If such solutions be precipitated, the substances causing the lack of transparency are thrown down as well, and the deposit when dried is opaque in thick layers.

It has, however, been observed that caustic alkalis precipitate these opaque substances and enable clear solutions of casein to be obtained.

Total Percentage of Caustic Soda Referred to the Dry Casein.	Behaviour of the Casein Solution.	Total Percentage of Caustic Soda Referred to the Dry Casein.	Behaviour of the Casein Solution.	Additional Remarks.
2½ %	Fairly thin, grey, opaque homogeneous solution	12 %	Gelatinous, faintly greenish, perfectly homogeneous, translucent with the appearance of boiled starch	A sample, shaken up with cold water, separated into liquid and sediment
3½ %	Somewhat thinner than the foregoing			
4½ %	Do. do.	13 %	Thinner jelly	
5 %	Do. do.			
6 %	Do. do.			
7 %	Do. do.			
8 %	Do. do.			
9 %	Do. do.			
10 %	Whiter in colour, signs of thickening			
11 %	Thick jelly	14 %	Perfectly water-white solution separated from very voluminous, muddy, whitish precipitate	
11 %				
11 %	A sample turned green like whey on boiling, and when left to stand, separated into an imperfectly clear liquid and a sediment			

Technical casein is mixed with 13 times its weight of water, containing in solution 2½ parts of Na<sub>2</sub>O per 100 of dry

casein. This gives a uniform milky liquid, which when treated with progressively larger quantities of 5 per cent. caustic soda furnishes the results expressed in the foregoing table. No further change is obtained by even doubling the quantity of caustic soda, though the addition of larger quantities of 20 per cent. soda lye cause precipitation of sodium caseate, which redissolves on dilution with water.

The action of caustic alkalis differs considerably with the quantity employed. Several times the amount of alkali necessary for solution may be added without any visible change being produced, the solution rather becoming thinner. On the other hand, if the addition of caustic lye be continued further, the liquid begins to thicken, and finally separation is effected into a perfectly clear solution, containing the casein, whilst the opaque particles are deposited as sediment.

Further experiments have shown that warmth, concentrating the solution, and prolonged standing, all favour the separation, which, moreover, can be effected very quickly by a single addition of alkali. Casein solutions prepared without alkali, and even milk itself, can be converted in this manner into a clear solution and a precipitate. The resulting clear liquid is colourless, greenish-yellow, brownish or red, according to the degree of contamination and to the temperature employed.

Since the various technical varieties of casein exhibit different conditions of solution, in consequence of the methods of preparation adopted, it is impossible to give any minimum quantity of alkali that will cause separation in all cases; nevertheless, a preliminary test will furnish the necessary information.

The clear casein solutions prepared in the foregoing manner can be treated—after removal of the sediment—in the same way as the turbid solutions. For instance, the casein can be precipitated by an acid, and used in place of

ordinary casein, or the precipitate may be dried—whereby it becomes perfectly transparent—and worked up into artificial amber, jet, etc.

The claim advanced for the method is for the preparation of transparent masses from casein by treating casein, either dissolved or suspended in water, with such an excess of caustic alkali as to precipitate the opaque particles, whilst the casein is retained in clear solution, whence, after the sediment has been removed, the casein can be precipitated and worked up in any suitable way.

In the additional patent (141,309, 5th March, 1902) it is stated that the caustic alkali originally prescribed can be partly or wholly replaced by alkali carbonates, further experiments having shown that these carbonates have a clarifying effect when added in far larger quantity than is needed to dissolve free casein. The resulting decomposition is not so thoroughgoing as when caustic alkali is used, the latter acting also on the sulphur compounds present in the casein solution, and causing discoloration (yellow stain) of the clarified solution or of the precipitated casein, unless the operation be performed with extreme care. Hence when a colourless product is specially desired, the caustic alkalis may be advantageously replaced, wholly or in part, by their carbonates.

For example, 55 gallons of milk, separated from all impurities as far as could be effected by repeated centrifugalising, were treated with  $7\frac{3}{4}$  lb. of soda (equal to about 40 per cent. of the weight of casein present). After a short time the colour changed, and on passing the liquid again through the separator, a greasy, muddy sediment was eliminated. The casein, precipitated from the resulting liquid by acids, was colourless and transparent in thin sheets.

In German patent 147,994 (19th February, 1901) a process was described for imparting to dried casein the necessary



plasticity to enable it to be moulded, this result being attained by moistening the casein with a little acid, *e.g.*, acetic acid, instead of water, before pressing.

When freshly precipitated from milk, casein is plastic and can be easily pressed in moulds. On account of the large percentage of water in this fresh casein, however, the articles prepared from it are difficult to dry without warping and cracking; and the casein itself is very liable to decompose. On the other hand, the use of the stable, dry casein is attended with the drawback that it loses its original plasticity in course of conversion into the commercial form, and this plasticity is not recoverable by moistening the dry product; consequently, exceedingly high pressure and warmth are required to form the same into a homogeneous mass. This leads to the danger of the colour and hardness of the article being affected by the heat.

This plasticity, however, can be restored by treating the casein with a trace of acid, preferably at the stage of moistening the mass before pressing. The degree of this acidity varies, of course, with the different kinds of commercial caseins, but can be easily found by trial. The acetic acid used for souring milk in dairies will do for the purpose very well.

To prepare a hard casein mass, casein, either in solution or in the dry, soluble state, is converted into the insoluble form by acids or salts, and treated with formaldehyde. It is advisable to free the casein from moisture, by evaporation or pressure, before adding the formaldehyde.

The product obtained in this way, and known as galalith (from the Greek, *gala* = milk, and *lithos* = stone)—though it cannot be regarded as petrified milk—has been described by Dr. K. Hassack as follows. The horny fundamental mass can be converted into products of manifold colours and uses by the incorporation of pigments, earths, cellulose, ground

cork, etc., with the casein previous to hardening it with formaldehyde. Imitation jet or ebony, for instance, can be prepared by adding 2 per cent. of lampblack and precipitating with lead acetate, preferably in the warm to secure a curd with less moisture. The precipitate is trituated with water, and drained and carefully dried on a cloth strainer. Drying must proceed very slowly to prevent cracking, and, therefore, takes several months. The resulting dark grey cake is thoroughly soaked with formaldehyde, and when dried and polished is a glossy, deep black in colour. Other colours may be obtained by varying the pigment. Thus, nickel sulphate, used for throwing down the casein, gives a fine green mass, whilst copper sulphate gives a peculiar bluish green, and so on. Very good imitation marble is obtained by stirring mineral pigments in with the freshly precipitated casein, and particularly novel effects are furnished by mixing bronze powders with the plain or coloured casein, before hardening with formaldehyde. The Gummiwaaren Fabriken (Rubber Works) of Harburg, Vienna, have produced at their various works, by the aid of pressure, sheets of galalith from  $\frac{1}{12}$  inch thick upward. By means of special tubular presses they make galalith tubes and rods, for turnery goods, knife handles, penholders, umbrella and stick handles, chessmen, cigar holders and mouthpieces for same, small boxes, buttons, dominoes, card counters, inlays for cups, coloured furniture decorations to replace coloured glass. These and many other articles are now made of galalith in Vienna, Gablonz and Nuremberg.

By treating it in suitable presses, galalith is also made up into backs for brushes, hairpins, rings and fancy articles, and it is also made in sheets for combs of all kinds. As a rule the mass is pressed before treating it with formaldehyde, but for thin articles this procedure may be reversed.

Dr. Hassack and his assistant, Sudey, are engaged in

making comparative tests with galalith and celluloid; and up to the present the following particulars may be given. The two substances agree closely in specific gravity, that of galalith being 1·317 to 1·35, according to the admixtures present, whilst celluloid is 1·34 to 1·4. In point of hardness galalith is a little inferior to calc spar, namely, 2·5, whilst that of celluloid is below 2; and this substance can be scratched by gypsum. One important difference in the working qualities is that while celluloid can be easily cut with a knife, galalith is hard to cut, and chips a good deal. With the saw or on the lathe they can both be worked well, but galalith the less easily on account of its greater hardness. Both polish well, but galalith the better of the two, giving a higher gloss. Celluloid is more elastic, thin sheets and rods recovering their original shape at once when bent or rolled, whereas galalith sheets or rods are brittle when bent. Galalith also has the drawback that it cannot at present be produced in sheets less than about  $\frac{1}{12}$  inch thick; unlike celluloid, in transparent sheets as thin as paper, and in fine threads. Neither can the sheets be obtained perfectly clear like glass; nor is it so plastic as celluloid though it becomes soft, like horn, on prolonged soaking in boiling water. It gradually absorbs a good deal of water when soaked, *viz.*, according to experimental results, 30 per cent. in six days at room temperature, and 33 per cent. in twelve days, in which process it swells and becomes like cheese, whereas celluloid will only absorb barely 1 per cent. of moisture in the same time. Galalith is unacted on by fats, oils, benzol, ether, alcohol or dilute acids, but it swells up considerably in alkaline liquids, which have no action on celluloid.

Both materials are bad conductors of electricity. Thus experiments made in the Vienna Technical High School with plates of celluloid and of galalith  $\frac{1}{12}$  inch thick showed both to be impervious to a current of 16,000 volts tension.

The great points of superiority possessed by galalith over celluloid are its freedom from all smell and its unflammable character. If held in a flame it merely chars, swelling up and giving off a disagreeable smell like burnt horn, whereas celluloid—as is well known—ignites at once and continues to burn rapidly with liberation of pungent vapours of camphor. The unflammability and insulating power of galalith will secure it a wide future in electrical work.

Galalith is made on a large scale at the Wimpasing and Harburg works of the above-named company. The casein is obtained from dairies in Hungary, Bohemia and Moravia, where it is separated from sweet skim milk by rennet, the whey being consumed for fodder.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### USES OF CASEIN IN THE TEXTILE INDUSTRY, FOR FINISHING COLOUR PRINTING, ETC.

CASEIN is chiefly used in calico printing, more rarely in the finishing department. The gummy ammoniacal solution of casein is employed as a medium for printing and fixing powdered pigments that will stand alkali. Fairly well-fixed colours are obtained when the ammonia has been driven off by vigorous drying or steaming. Solutions of casein in lime-water can also be used in the same way; in this case the colours are fixed by the action of the air, the carbonic acid in which acts the compound of lime and casein, and forms calcium carbonate and insoluble casein.

Pure casein is almost entirely insoluble in water, but, as already mentioned, it will dissolve in water containing carbonates, phosphates, alkalis or even alkali chlorides, weak alkali being the most efficient solvent. These solutions, in which the casein is undoubtedly combined with the alkali as a caseate, differ from solutions of albumin inasmuch as they neither become turbid nor coagulate when heated. They, however, acquire this property on the addition of magnesium sulphate, and it also appears in solutions of casein in lime-water, in which it is readily soluble. When casein solutions are treated with acids, a flocculent curd is precipitated, which may consist of a compound of the casein with the added acid. A similar precipitate is produced with acetic acid, but is redissolved on adding an excess of

hydrochloric acid, though reprecipitated on the amount of acid being still further increased.

Casein solutions are also precipitated by the action of the mucous membrane of the stomach of the calf, and also by the gastric juice of carnivorous animals. Precipitation is also produced by tannic acid and metallic salts, and a parallel to the behaviour of alkaline solutions of casein is also exhibited by the natural solutions of the substance, as in milk.

#### CASEOGUM

is a solution of casein in lime-water, and is used as an adhesive, more particularly for impregnating cotton and linen fabrics, which, on exposure to the air, absorb carbon dioxide. The casein, which is deposited on the fibre, assists the latter to absorb dyestuffs.

Thirty-two parts of fresh curd are stirred with 48 parts of water at 64° F. and rubbed through a metal sieve in order to reduce it to a finer state of division. On the other hand,  $\frac{3}{4}$  part of fresh, well-burned lime is slaked gradually with warm water until it falls to powder, which is thereupon mixed with  $3\frac{1}{2}$  parts of warm water, triturated, filtered through paper, and gradually added to the curd by stirring. The mixture at first thickens, and it is only after prolonged stirring that it grows thinner and attains the desired consistency. Care must be taken to have fresh lime of good quality, and to slake it with just the right quantity of water; neither too much nor too little. The curd must be rubbed down fine with the water so as to eradicate all lumps, and the water must be at the temperature already specified.

#### “GLUTIN.”

“Glutin” is a glaze for dressing curtain fabrics, and is also used as a medium for colours in dyeing and calico printing. It is prepared as follows:—

Curd, freed from adherent moisture by pressure, is ground

to a coarse, uniform powder, between rollers running in opposite directions. This powder is mixed with a solution of 1 part of sodium tungstate, and again put through the rollers in order to crush the particles of curd as fine as possible. As soon as the solution is brought in contact with the perfectly dry curd, the reaction commences at once and the mass begins to grow tougher. Should the curd contain much buttermilk, it is stirred up with a little hydrochloric acid and water, and repeatedly washed with water until all trace of acidity has disappeared. This done, the curd is pressed again and used as above described.

The cold mixture containing the sodium tungstate is placed in a water-jacketed pan, mixed with a little water if too dry, and melted at a moderate temperature with constant stirring, until a sample no longer shows any undecomposed curd. The mass may be preserved from putrefaction by adding a little carbolic acid or oil of cloves. When the mass is all melted, it may be poured out to cool, and then furnishes a more or less solid mass, according to the amount of water that has been added.

Owing to its solubility in water in all proportions, the mass possesses highly adhesive properties, and is particularly useful for fastening paper labels on sheet metal. When once dry, it is fairly waterproof. Curtains printed with earthy or metallic colours and this preparation have a fine gloss, and the coating is rendered more flexible by the addition of glycerine. "Glutin" is also soluble in glycerine, and forms therewith a fine, tough mass which, when applied to paper, gives a flexible coating that can be made as hard as leather by passing it through a solution of alum after drying.

#### CASEIN DRESSING FOR LINEN AND COTTON FABRICS.

Four parts of casein are stirred with 30 of water, followed by a gradual addition of 1 part of lime that has been

slaked to powder. At the same time, 2 parts of neutral soap are dissolved in 24 parts of water, and this solution is added to the casein solution. The fabric is impregnated with this preparation, and afterwards passed through a solution of aluminium acetate, warmed to 120° to 140° F., whereby the calcium caseate is rendered insoluble. After immersion for an instant in nearly boiling water, the fabric is dried.

#### ARGENTINE

is the name given by Heim to a special powder, prepared from zinc, which, when combined with casein, is or was used for dressing yarn or fabrics in order to provide them with a metallic finish.

The method of preparation is based on the precipitation of metallic tin in the form of powder, and on the use of casein as a medium. The tin precipitate is obtained from a solution of "tin salt" (stannous chloride) by the aid of metallic zinc and the electric current; and the powder, when well dried, is bolted through fine gauze, the coarser particles being redissolved for use over again.

The casein is prepared by moistening 1 part of casein powder with water for six to eight hours, after which it is diluted with water containing  $\frac{1}{4}$  part (referred to the casein) of strong ammonia, so that the casein swells up and finally becomes jelly. This is thinned with more water and stirred up with the argentine, 1 part of which will stand the addition of 1 to 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  parts of casein as a medium. Should the mass thicken on standing, it is placed in a pan with warm water, whereupon it is again ready for use. To make the printing colour more workable it may also be mixed with some strong gum, preferably light in colour and well strained.

The casein solution may also be prepared in the following manner, according as it is to be used as a dressing or for printing: 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  parts of casein are softened for ten to twelve



hours with 7 parts of lukewarm water containing  $\frac{3}{4}$  part of strong ammonia. During this time the casein will have swelled up thoroughly, and can then be diluted with another 7 parts of lukewarm water, and treated with an addition of acetic acid until a precipitate is no longer visible.

The chief rule in making this argentine preparation is to have plenty of metal present, if the fabric is to exhibit a silvery lustre when calendered, since it must be remembered that this lustre is in nowise due to the medium, but solely to the properly combined and finely divided metal, under the influence of friction.

When printing colours or dressings become thick on standing, they must not be diluted with any preparation, but should be warmed in a pan of hot water or on a water bath.

#### PRINTING COLOUR WITH METALLIC LUSTRE.

According to German patent 78,731, a preparation for producing on printed curtains, and the like, the same effect as bronze powder, may be obtained by treating powdered mica with an ammoniacal solution of casein and a dissolved metallic salt, and colouring the whole with some vegetable or aniline dye.

#### PROCESS FOR SOFTENING, SIZING AND LOADING TEXTILE FIBRES, AND FOR TREATING YARNS AND FABRICS.

In the process introduced by S. Carmichael, a bath is prepared by dissolving casein in oil. If used for yarns and woven fabrics, the casein may be dissolved in a solution of soap, and mixed with the necessary loading ingredients. For example, the bath may consist of:—

Casein . . . . .	16 parts.
Soap . . . . .	8 "
Mineral or other oil . . . . .	60 "
Water . . . . .	300 "
Loading . . . . .	200 "

The casein must be free from any acid impurities.

The stuffs in question are entered in a bath prepared by swelling casein in an aqueous solution of glycerine, lactic acid, dye and, if necessary, loading ingredients being also present. Ten parts of powdered casein are mixed with 50 of water and a solution of 2 parts of glycerine (30° B.) in 100 of water, the necessary dye and loading ingredients being added when the casein is thoroughly swollen. This casein bath may be acidified with 2 to 4 per cent. of lactic acid, without producing any precipitation of the casein itself. By means of this bath it is possible to finish and dye fabrics in an acid liquor, which was previously impracticable with alkaline solutions of casein.

#### FIXING CASEIN AND OTHER ALBUMINOIDS ON THE FIBRE, MORE PARTICULARLY IN DYEING.

Vegetable fibres, *e.g.*, cotton, jute or flax, are steeped with a solution of casein in hydrochloric acid, phosphoric acid, or lactic acid, and treated with a saline solution like sodium sulphate, ferric acetate, sodium bichromate or sodium tungstate, capable of throwing down from the casein solution a precipitate that is insoluble in water. For instance, 10 parts of casein are dissolved in 200 of water and 1 part of 25 per cent. hydrochloric acid. The cotton is steeped in this solution, and, after the excess liquor has been removed by squeezing, is passed through a warm 10 per cent. solution of Glauber salt, and then washed. The hydrochloric acid may be replaced by an equal amount of 25 per cent. phosphoric acid, the material being afterwards treated with ferric acetate and washed (German patent, 139,565).

#### FIXING INSOLUBLE COLOURING MATTERS.

The colours to be fixed are printed with size or casein, the fabric being then steamed or treated with a solution of

formaldehyde. The resulting insoluble compound of the latter substance and size or casein envelops the colouring matter, and thus fixes it, waterproof, on the fibre. Or the printing colour, prepared with dissolved size or casein, is treated with the ammonia or bisulphite compound of formaldehyde and printed on the fabric. This printing colour does not coagulate at ordinary temperature, and it is only when the printed fabric has been steamed or heated that the formaldehyde compound is decomposed, and the liberated formaldehyde combines with the size or casein to form an insoluble compound. This method has been patented and used in Great Britain. In another system the printing colour is prepared with casein, and the printed and steamed fabric is exposed to the action of formaldehyde.

#### WATERPROOFING AND SOFTENING DRESSING.

The finishing of textile fabrics has hitherto consisted in impregnating them with a soluble dressing and then drying them, the dressing thereupon solidifying on the fibre and making the material more or less stiff. This system, however, is attended with the defect that when the fabrics are moistened the stiffness soon disappears owing to the solubility of the dressing. The defect in question can now be obviated by impregnating the fabric with a soluble mass that is capable of conversion into an insoluble form by means of chemical or physical agents. According to a process patented in France, the fabric is treated in the cold with a mixture of casein, albumin or gelatine, and formaldehyde or hexamethylenamine, then dried at 80° C., and finally steamed. The solution of the colloidal substance may also be incorporated with pigments or loading ingredients, such as barium sulphate, these being fixed on the fibre when the albumin is hardened by the formaldehyde. Casein and gelatine are used as 10 per cent. solutions; and the aqueous solution

of formaldehyde is of 1 to 2 per cent. strength. Formaldehyde bisulphite is prepared by mixing 8 parts by weight of 40 per cent. formaldehyde with 10 of sodium bisulphite of 30° B. strength. The hexamethylenamine is obtained from 8 parts of formaldehyde and 10 of concentrated ammonia.

#### CASEIN FOR MERCERISED CRÊPE.

According to a German patent process, the fabric is printed with casein or albumin, steamed to produce coagulation, passed through a concentrated solution of caustic soda (30° to 35° B.), squeezed between rollers to express the superfluous lye, hung up for a time to prevent an undue rise of temperature in consequence of the mercerisation process, then acidified with dilute hydrochloric acid, washed and dried on a tenting frame.

#### FIXING ZINC WHITE ON COTTON WITH FORMALDEHYDE.

The use of formaldehyde or formalin in cotton printing is based on its property of coagulating casein, albuminoids, glue, etc., and rendering them insoluble. Thus, in printing metallic powders and pigments on cotton fabrics, use can be made of a compound of casein or gelatine and formalin (Schering). Moreover, formalin can be employed with advantage for fixing zinc oxide, printed in a medium of casein and borax on thin, transparent fabrics or on mercerised cotton goods. The fabric remains soft, and the dull zinc white produces a favourable effect in contrast with the glossy ground; and it can also be toned any desired shade by the addition of pigments. At the same time it appears that the action of the formaldehyde on the casein is more rapid and thorough in an atmosphere of hot steam than in ordinary air. The fabric is therefore put through a Mather and Platt machine, in which the formaldehyde is vaporised



and the zinc white is so firmly fixed on the fibre that it will stand boiling with soap for a quarter of an hour. Finally, it should be noted that the casein colours fixed with formaldehyde are as pure in tone as those obtained with egg albumin, whilst considerably lower in price.

W. Kay & Schoen print the cotton fabric with a colour compounded of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  parts of zinc white and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  of casein-borax medium; and the goods are afterwards steamed for five to ten minutes. In the bottom of the steamer is arranged a perforated pipe, through which formaldehyde (40 per cent.) is admitted in order that it may be vaporised in the steam chamber and fix the casein and zinc white on the fibre.

#### CASEIN-MAGNESIA.

Ten parts of powdered casein, 40 of water and  $\frac{3}{4}$  part of magnesia are mixed together for twenty-four hours at the ordinary temperature, and afterwards added to a solution of 0.3 part of barium hydroxide in 30 parts of water, the whole being warmed to 95° F. for some time. An excess of barium hydroxide is injurious. This preparation will fix mineral pigments to stand washing.

#### CASEIN MEDIUM FOR CALICO PRINTING.

Six parts of casein are well stirred up with 50 of water at 120° F., and left to settle. The clear liquid is poured off and the residue is mixed with 1 part of borax dissolved in 12 parts of water.

#### CHEVALOTT'S WATERPROOFING PROCESS.

The Chevalott process is designed to deprive textile fibres of their capillarity, and thus prevent them from absorbing water, without obstructing the interstitial spaces between the threads in the fabric. The process is highly suitable for materials that are to be worn next the skin, and

have to be frequently washed, *e.g.*, underlinen, clothing, etc. At the same time the fabric retains its softness and permeability to air, and can be washed with soap, benzine, etc., without endangering its waterproof properties. The preparation consists of a mixture of about 4 parts of casein and 20 of water, stirred up until of about the consistency of cream. To this is gradually added about  $\frac{1}{10}$  part of lime slaked to powder, which furnishes a greasy fluid mass. At the same time 2 parts of neutral soap are dissolved in about 24 of water and mixed with the casein solution. The fabric is impregnated with this mixture, so as to about double its original weight, and is then entered in a solution of aluminium acetate at about 120° to 140° F., which renders the casein insoluble and also forms with the alkaline soap an insoluble aluminium margarate. Finally, after having entered the fabric in nearly boiling water, it is dried and ironed.

#### LOADING SILK.

According to a patent granted to the Chemische Fabrik auf Aktien in Berlin, the silk is repeatedly soaked in a solution of casein or size, which may also contain an addition of metallic salts. By afterwards exposing the fabric to the action of formaldehyde, its weight may be increased in this way by 30 to 50 per cent., without metallic adjuncts. At the same time the gloss and scroop of the silk are improved and the fibre is strengthened.

## CHAPTER IX.

### CASEIN FOODSTUFFS.

It is a well-known fact that animal albumin plays a very important part in the food of man ; and it may also be accepted as proved that man should take one-third of his requirements of albuminoids in the form of animal food. In this connection, meat is the principal and almost sole form of nourishment possible, since eggs, milk and milk products cannot have the same importance for dwellers in towns, soldiers and sailors, hospital patients, prisoners, and so forth, as they have for country people. Besides, meat is the only form of animal food that man can continue to take with pleasure in sufficient quantity to satisfy the demands of the body for albumin ; whereas, in the case of milk, the consumption of the necessary quantity sooner or later causes a distaste for the article with most people. Now, in order to provide meat supplies at a price which would enable the bulk of the populace to purchase a sufficiency for the purposes aforesaid, it is not enough to merely have recourse to cheap imported meat. On the one hand there is the difficulty of excluding disease, and, on the other, the alterations to which the meat is exposed (drying, pickling, smoking, etc.) in order to make it keep frequently affect its flavour and digestibility.

For this reason, said Dr. Adolf Jolles, in a paper read before the Industrial Association of Lower Austria, it is easy to understand that the endeavours of modern chemistry

should have been directed to the discovery of some substitute for the scarce commodity, animal albumin. The results of these endeavours have been utilised industrially, so that there are now on the market a number of preparations complying more or less with the requirements of the age. These requirements are as follows. In the first place, the meat substitute must be relatively cheaper than animal albumin. Secondly, it must be tasteless, inodorous, of the character of flour, and not more than faintly tinged with colour. Thirdly, it must be free from micro-organisms, and be capable of keeping for any length of time without undergoing alteration; and, finally, it must be suitable to and assimilable by the organism when taken in considerable amount.

The first substance coming under consideration as a raw material for such preparations is milk, on account of its content of casein. The cereals and leguminosæ are also highly important, as cheap and readily available materials rich in albumin. The number of such preparations is extremely large, but only the chief of those made from casein will be dealt with here.

One of the cheapest preparations obtained from milk is that known as *Lactarine*, which costs only about 4½d. per lb. This preparation, which has been on the market since the beginning of 1898, is an extremely fine white powder, soluble in water, and having the following composition: water, 9.92 per cent.; fat, 0.4 per cent.; casein, 78.16 per cent.; non-nitrogenous and fat-free substance, 7.77 per cent.; mineral matters, 3.75 per cent. With regard to the assimilation of this preparation by the human organism, there is no information at present available; nor, indeed, in any other particular; and the method of manufacture is kept secret.

*Galactogen* costs about 1s. 10d. per lb. It is made from skim milk by the addition of a patent preparation. The



albumin contained in the product is not coagulable by the heat of boiling water. The chief constituents are : fat, 3·5 to 4·5 per cent. ; albumin, 70 per cent. ; and phosphoric acid, 1·5 to 2·5 per cent. The flavour is agreeable, and the preparation is said to be liked. As usual with milk preparations, it is mixed with other foods.

*Guttmann's Nutrient Milk Flour.*—In contrast to the other albuminoid preparations, this milk food is a mixture of several ingredients. Skim milk casein is mixed with prepared carbohydrates, mainly gluten-free oatmeal and a small quantity of aromatic substances. The preparation is a fine white powder of agreeable flavour, and its albumin is soluble in water. The composition is as follows : dry matter, 92·7 per cent., of which about 20 per cent. is albumin, 65 per cent. carbohydrates, and 4 per cent. fat. It is said to be very digestible and liked by children and dyspeptics. Its chief characteristic is the large proportion of readily digestible carbohydrates ; and for this reason its employment might be indicated in suitable cases.

*Sanatogen* is another casein preparation. It is made by a patented process, and consists of 95 per cent. of casein and 5 per cent. of sodium glycerophosphate. It is a whitish powder, inodorous and nearly tasteless. Some people experience a disagreeable after-taste on first taking this preparation and do not grow accustomed to it for some little time. Sanatogen is assimilated in precisely the same way as meat albumin ; and, according to the results of experiment, the assimilation is good.

*Eulactol* differs from most casein preparations inasmuch as it is a mixed product. It is prepared by evaporating milk, according to a patented process, by exposure to a temperature not exceeding 98° F., *in vacuo*, since otherwise the fat would sustain alteration, leading to early rancidity. The explanation of this appears to be that the fat globules are surrounded

by an albuminous envelope, which is destroyed at higher temperatures, thus exposing the contained fat to the air, whereas ordinarily it is protected therefrom by the said envelope. Eulactol contains 33.25 per cent. of albumin, 46.3 per cent. of fat, 14.3 per cent. of carbohydrates, and 4.3 per cent. of saline matter. It is a fine white powder, and both the albuminoid constituents and the carbohydrates are mainly soluble. The preparation is said to have been consumed by individuals for long periods and in large doses and to have been well assimilated, though no definite experiments have been reported. On account of its low proportion of albuminoids the preparation cannot be classed along with others of the same type.

The method of preparing *Dr. Riegel's Milk Albumin* is described in the patent specification as follows. The curd is precipitated from milk by means of ethylsulphuric acid, instead of the acids usually employed. This treatment leaves the casein undecomposed, and throws it down in a compact, non-mucinous condition. At the same time it is almost entirely free from ash constituents at the first precipitation, owing to the solubility of the lime salt of ethylsulphuric acid. The content of free sulphuric acid is also very small. The precipitation is effected with a dilute solution and at a temperature of over 86° F. It has been observed that the casein contains a considerably smaller number of germs than that obtained with acetic acid or lactic acid precipitation, this being attributed to the germicide properties of ethylsulphuric acid. The preparation is free from pathogenic organisms. Analysis reveals the following composition: albumin, 86.13; water, 8.23; fat, 0.31; mineral matters, 17.45. The preparation is readily soluble in water, is devoid of any specific odour, and has a by no means disagreeable flavour when taken in small quantities. No experiments in natural digestion have yet been made with the preparation.

*Plasmon*, formerly known as caseon, is an albuminoid preparation obtained from milk. It is a yellowish-white powder, of medium fineness, inodorous and with a faint flavour resembling sweet milk. It contains 75 to 80 per cent. of albumin, 5 to 7 per cent. of sodium carbonate, 5 to 10 per cent. of fat and milk sugar. Considerable discussion has taken place respecting its probable content of bacteria; but at all events it appears to be free from tubercle bacilli. A more important point, however, in connection with plasmon is its assimilability; and on this point opinions are unanimous, all the experiments made having given favourable results. Moreover, it has been repeatedly determined that casein is equal in nutrient value to lean meat, and is readily absorbed in the intestinal canal. Plasmon can be used in a variety of ways. For instance, it can be mixed with an equal quantity of sugar, then boiled and eaten in this form; and it can also be advantageously baked into bread along with flour. Plasmon solutions may be incorporated with other foods without affecting their flavour in the slightest degree; and, finally, plasmon biscuits, plasmon cocoa and plasmon chocolate are prepared and sold.

Dr. Schreiber says of fresh casein that it may be used as a substitute for soup, and may be incorporated with flour in breadmaking without having any great influence on the flavour, though greatly increasing the percentage of albumin at a very low cost. For this purpose the casein is preferably prepared by acting on skim milk with commercial rennet, the precipitate being drained from the whey and passed through a sieve or mill, which delivers the product in the form of fine flakes. These must be used while fresh, or they harden.

*Nutrium* is a foodstuff prepared from casein, common salt and milk sugar. According to F. Bimbi, it forms a white or yellowish powder containing 29.1 per cent. of nitrogenous

substance. It dissolves in water, forming milky flakes and giving an acid reaction.

#### CASEIN FOOD.

A casein food, which dissolves without any separation of gelatinous casein when boiled in water, is obtained by mixing casein or its salts with substances containing albumose or peptone.

#### SYNTHETIC MILK.

According to W. Hall's patent (8th December, 1903) synthetic milk is prepared by stirring up an aqueous solution of about 10 parts of sodium bicarbonate with 85 parts of ordinary dry casein, the mixture being well ground and treated with 2 parts of finely powdered calcium chloride, following this treatment by incorporating with the product about 5 parts of powdered milk sugar and 5 of butter fat for each  $4\frac{1}{2}$  parts of casein present.

#### MILK FOOD.

According to S. Ramage (American patent, 730,702), milk is made slightly alkaline and heated, treated with a coagulant, and the resulting casein exposed to a steam pressure of 100 lb. per square inch until converted into liquid amide caseose.

#### EMULSIFIABLE CASEIN.

To obtain casein in a form that emulsifies when boiled in water, it is mixed with a quantity of an alkaline salt, insufficient to produce a soluble compound; and this mixture, after being moistened with water, is dried at a moderate temperature. The product on being boiled with water gives a homogeneous emulsion closely resembling milk. This preparation is patented by the Aktien-Gesellschaft für Anilin-Fabrikation, Berlin.



## CASEIN PHOSPHATE FOR BAKING.

To prepare casein phosphate for breadmaking, Hatmaker mixes a syrup of monocalcium phosphate ( $\text{Ca}(\text{H}_2\text{PO}_4)_2$ )—free from sulphuric acid—and water with casein that has been precipitated from milk by means of an acid and freed from milk sugar, salts and soluble impurities by washing with water. These ingredients are intimately mixed by putting them through a mill, or in any other suitable way, and the resulting thick, uniform mass is finally dried at a low temperature *in vacuo* and reduced to powder.

Another patent by the same inventor relates to the preparation of a stable, non-hygroscopic compound of casein with phosphoric acid, by concentrating an aqueous solution of phosphoric acid to a syrupy consistency along with 1 part of casein, and then intimately mixing this with the rest of the casein and drying and grinding the product. This may be mixed with an equal quantity of sodium bicarbonate and used in breadmaking.

## BERNSTEIN'S BAKING PREPARATION.

A baking preparation consisting of casein and albumin is obtained by heating skim milk, precipitating the casein, and converting the same into a creamy condition by further mechanical treatment.

MAKING BREAD, LOW IN CARBOHYDRATES, FROM  
FLOUR AND CURD.

Crude casein forms a useful adjunct in breadmaking, but in the ordinary method of baking its use is merely a restricted one, since any excess over a very limited quantity prevents the dough from rising properly. At the same time the milk sugar introduced in the curd remains in the bread. These two drawbacks to the use of the bread for invalids

can be obviated by adding to the dough and casein a portion of peptone, albumose (or substances containing the same), digestive extracts, albuminoids, or derivatives thereof.

#### HIGGINS'S CASEIN FOOD.

Casein is precipitated from skim milk by hydrochloric acid, the product being dried, ground to powder and mixed with flour, rice, grits, tapioca, oatmeal, arrowroot, bran, sugar, etc.

#### PREPARING SOLUBLE CASEIN COMPOUNDS WITH CITRATES.

Milk casein, in the moist state, is rubbed down with trisodium citrate, with or without an addition of sodium bicarbonate or trisodium phosphate, and the product is dried.

#### CASEIN FOOD.

Milk casein or curd is dissolved and its acidity, determined by testing, is partially neutralised, the resulting mass being dried, sterilised and used as a foodstuff.

#### SELL'S CURD "ZWIEBACK" ROLLS.

Precipitated casein is mixed with milk sugar, exposed to the action of kephir ferments and neutralised, the product being absorbed by Zwieback powder (Zwieback is a kind of roll made in Germany) and dried.

## CHAPTER X.

### SUNDRY APPLICATIONS OF CASEIN.

#### USES OF CASEIN IN THE PAPER INDUSTRY.

AN important part is played by adhesives in the industries wherein paper is employed, both in order to inseparably fasten together individual sheets of paper, convert paper pulp into a mouldable condition, and also for the application of thin layers of colouring matter or other coatings on paper or millboard articles. Such coatings may be either matt or more or less glossy, but in any event must be able to withstand to a certain extent the influence of moisture. For all these purposes casein is, *per se*, admirably adapted, since it will stick sheets or bands of paper together and forms thin coatings of considerable elasticity both alone or in association with other substances, colouring matters in particular. When a solution of casein is treated with small quantities of formaldehyde, and the article coated with the preparation is exposed to the air, a number of new products can be obtained. Thus, for instance (by patented processes), we obtain waterproof paper that can be used instead of guttapercha paper, waterproof cardboard boxes and cartridge cases, washable wall papers, washable paper garments, coloured papers, art papers, transfer papers and so on. Utensils, more particularly basins, dishes and the like, made of paper pulp or millboard, can be rendered waterproof by treatment with formaldehyde, and used for a variety of purposes, *e.g.*, as developing dishes in photography. Similarly, cardboard

treated in the same way can be used for stereotype matrices, and will keep for any length of time, by reason of its lightness and durability. It is thus evident that the field of application open to casein is practically illimitable.

#### METACHROMOTYPE PAPER.

This paper, which is used for transfer pictures, is preferably made of a fairly good, lightly sized (if at all) but smooth paper, capable of readily absorbing the thin solution of casein (preferably prepared with sodium bicarbonate) and of softening with similar ease when it has to be released. Since imperfectly coating the paper with the adhesive will result in a defective impression, it is evident that the coating must be perfectly uniform. The operation is best performed with a flat brush, the paper being spread on a table and the casein solution applied smoothly by working the brush in one direction. If necessary the coating is repeated, the brush being then worked at right angles to the previous direction.

The prepared paper is next hung up to dry on lines in a gently warmed room, preferably in a stretched condition to prevent it curling. It is afterwards cut into sheets and packed, either with or without calendering to smoothen the surface.

#### SIZING PAPER WITH CASEIN.

Notwithstanding the most scrupulous care bestowed on the preparation of the resin soap used in sizing paper, it has been found impossible to impart the desired firmness and impermeability to the paper by the use of vegetable size. In view of the large quantities of casein now obtainable as a result of buttermaking on the large scale, which casein has had only a very limited application, it seemed advisable to test its suitability for sizing paper; and with this object comparative experiments were carried out by Dr. Zanardi with resin soap and casein solution.



Paper pulp was mixed with dissolved casein for twenty minutes, and to the mixture was added a solution of alum—as in resin sizing—followed by dilute sulphuric acid until a faintly acid reaction was produced. In the trials the casein was poured on at the same time as the resin soap, or else after the latter had been precipitated by aluminium sulphate. In general the addition of casein was found to have a favourable influence on the firmness of the paper and on the amount of size consumed. Casein can also be used for this purpose by itself, and furnishes a coating that will make the paper easier to roll up.

#### WATERPROOFING PAPER.

This process is devised for making paper and fabrics waterproof to such an extent that they will stand protracted exposure to the influence of moisture without losing their softness and elasticity. At the same time they are made superior to paper or fabric coated with caoutchouc, both in point of durability and freedom from smell.

The principal features of the process are that the paper or other material to be waterproofed receives two waterproof coatings in succession, the first consisting of a specially prepared solution of glue or casein (or mixture of both), which, when warmed and treated with certain additions, remains permanently supple and elastic.

In carrying out the process, glue or casein is dissolved in water or other suitable solvent and treated with an addition of sodium tungstate to improve the tenacity (if desired), the albuminous substances being then precipitated by tannin or other suitable precipitant as a viscid insoluble mass.

This mass, which is elastic and plastic while moist, becomes very hard and brittle on drying, so that it would be entirely unsuitable for the purpose in view were it not corrected by melting it in a pan (preferably before it has set)

and adding glycerine, syrup, molasses, fats or oils, alone or in conjunction, the whole being well mixed. The quantity so added depends on the degree of suppleness desired, and is preferably about one half of the mass obtained by the afore-said precipitation.

The resulting mass for the first coating can be applied to paper or fabric before it has set, and forms a very flexible, insoluble coating resembling caoutchouc. To make the paper keep better it may be at once mounted on fabric by pressure, or pressed between two similarly treated sheets or roll lengths of paper. Of course the fabric may have been impregnated beforehand, or else the joined paper and fabric may be treated afterwards.

To improve the waterproofing qualities and impart a fine gloss, a second coating is applied of any convenient waterproof varnish or lacquer. Colouring matters can be incorporated with the first or second coating, according to choice.

#### CASEIN SOLUTION FOR COATING PAPER.

A casein solution, suitable for coating paper and for other purposes, can be prepared, according to W. A. Hall's English patent, by mixing casein (precipitated with hydrochloric acid) with 10 to 15 per cent. of its weight of sodium phosphate, preferably trisodium phosphate, and 1 to 3 parts of water to each 1 part of casein.

#### HORN'S CLEAR SOLUTION OF CASEIN.

A clear solution of casein, free from fatty bodies, is obtained by treating a 10 to 20 per cent. solution of casein with 7 to 8 per cent. of caustic potash (according to the amount of dry matter), the whole being shaken up with ether for a short time and run into a settling vat. The clear solution of casein subsides and can be drawn off.

## WATER- AND FIRE-PROOF ASBESTOS PAPER AND BOARD.

An essential preliminary is to isolate the asbestos by chemical means, in order that it may retain its flexibility in presence of the subsequently added ingredients, and not become brittle.

This treatment is preferably effected by means of a saline solution or dilute glycerine, the latter being more convenient in practice.

The asbestos is first mixed with 4 to 6 per cent. by weight of glycerine, followed by 5 to 10 parts of water. The medium formerly used for binding together the fibres of asbestos was fish glue (especially in the Ladewig process); but casein will accomplish the same purpose more effectually and at far less cost.

The mixed asbestos and casein (*e.g.*, casein and borax solution) is next reduced to fine pulp in a mill. This impregnation isolates the asbestos fibres and prepares them chemically in such a manner that they are no longer exposed to any injurious action on the part of subsequent adjuncts, as was formerly the case.

The well-ground mass is treated with 2 to 3 parts of resin soap (previously dissolved in hot water), the whole being well mixed and afterwards treated with about 6 parts of zinc chloride dissolved in 15 to 25 parts of water, and finally by 20 parts of graphite in suspension in about 50 parts of water. The graphite makes the mass fireproof and gives it the appearance of vulcanite.

For use as a packing in pipe flanges that have to be frequently opened, this material may be covered with wire gauze on one or both sides.

The finished, intimately mixed mass is worked up into paper on millboard of any desired thickness, in the usual kind of machines for these purposes. The product is afterwards

pressed, dried in the air, and impregnated with a 1 per cent. solution of zinc chloride. It is then redried, passed through a  $\frac{1}{2}$  to 1 per cent. aqueous solution of resin soap (prepared by dissolving the resin soap in spirit and then in water), and finally dried again in the air. The appearance is improved by calendering. The finished article is elastic and completely fire- and water-proof.

Asbestos millboard is prepared as follows:—

Whereas long staple asbestos is required for spun articles, the short fibres of ordinary quality are more suitable for the purpose now in view. The short fibres separated from those of longer staple by screening, anterior to the spinning process, are also used. The crude asbestos is put through an opener to break up the fibres, and the material is then softened with boiling water, after which it is ground in a mill of exactly similar type to those employed in paper-making. This consists of a long, rectangular, wooden, stone or iron trough, filled with water and containing a revolving roller provided with steel rails, underneath which is arranged a massive oaken block inlaid with a row of knives. The trough is divided into two parts by a central partition, over which the asbestos fibres are flushed by the water into the working compartment, where they are acted on by the roller and knives. A hood placed above the roller prevents any of the fibres being thrown out of the trough by centrifugal force. Means are provided for setting the roller progressively closer to the knives, so as to reduce the fibres more and more. At the same time the medium—casein, starch, gum, etc.—employed to bind the asbestos together, is usually added in the mill.

The further treatment of the asbestos pulp is on precisely the same lines as in dealing with paper pulp for the manufacture of machine-made paper. The pulp is delivered on to an endless sieve of metallic gauze, which receives a vibratory



motion to facilitate the draining of the water ; after which it is passed between rollers to squeeze out more of the water. By means of an endless belt the pulp is next fed to a second pair of rollers, after leaving which it still contains a considerable amount of water. It is cut up into squares, which are placed between zinc plates ; and a number of these alternating layers are put into a powerful hydraulic press, after leaving which the pulp squares are hung up in a steam-heated chamber, to get rid of the remaining moisture.

Asbestos board can, of course, be made in varying thicknesses. The ordinary makes are composed of 6 to 12 and even more layers, placed one above another and united by passing them between rollers and in the hydraulic press. The usual thicknesses are  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ , 1,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , 2,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ , 3, 4, 5 to 10 and 15 millimetres, and the sheets are generally 40 inches in length and breadth.

The chemical composition of the mass varies to an extraordinary degree. Most kinds are greatly adulterated, containing not more than 50 per cent. of asbestos, and that, too, of inferior quality. It cannot be too strongly emphasised that the valuable properties of the asbestos are the more apparent in proportion as a better quality material is used, and as trickery and adjuncts are shunned.

#### PAPER FLASKS, ETC., FOR OILS AND FATS.

Vessels of different shapes can be manufactured from paper by reducing well-sized paper to pulp. A useful paper for this purpose consists of about the following proportions :—

Rag . . . . .	10 parts.
Straw . . . . .	40 „
Brown cellulose . . . . .	50 „

The paper is impregnated with a solution of casein, in order to render it impermeable and at the same time to make the individual sheets of paper stick together. With

this object, the sheets of paper are coated on both sides with an ammoniacal solution of casein, laid one on top of the other, and at once placed in heated moulds, the pulp being stamped, by means of a press, into a tray or basin of the form most suitable for the purpose in view.

The moulds are made in two halves. In the case of a flask or bottle, for instance, the basin is fitted at the top with a lug for receiving the stopper, with the neck, and, underneath, the part on which the bottle is to stand. The stamping mould is gently warmed before the paper is inserted, so that the casein solution sinks more deeply into the pores, and at the same time the ammonia has a better chance of evaporating. After a short time the paper mass will have set hard, and the finished half bottle can be taken out, and left in the air to dry completely. These halves are afterwards thinned down at the edges where they are to be joined, pressed together, cemented with casein glue, and coated with a thin layer of casein solution inside and out.

#### WASHABLE DRAWING AND WRITING PAPER.

Any convenient sort of paper is treated with a first coating of casein, size or other suitable medium containing an admixture of some finely pulverised mineral substance, such as zinc white, chalk, lime, heavy spar, etc., and the requisite colouring matter. It is then brushed over with, or dipped in, water-glass containing a small quantity of magnesia, and left in the air for a short time to dry, at a temperature of about 77° F. This second coating may be replaced by one of dilute formaldehyde.

Paper treated in this way may be written or drawn upon with pencil, chalk, coloured crayon, charcoal, transfer ink or lithographic ink; and the marks thus produced may be washed off again without any appreciable alteration of the paper.

Paper of this kind possesses the advantage of great economy in use for schools and designers. In drawing plans, for instance, the design can be easily and rapidly removed with a damp sponge, and a fresh drawing made at once on the same sheet. Such paper forms an excellent substitute for the heavy slates used in schools for writing and drawing lessons; and is highly advisable for this purpose, inasmuch as it can be made in colours that will not fatigue the eye.

Nevertheless, it cannot be denied that repeated writing and washing soon wears out the protective coating, and that the sheets will not last very long, especially under the heavy wear to which they are subjected in school work.

#### PAPER WRAPPERING FOR FOOD, CLOTHING, ETC.

The customary practice of protecting clothes from the ravages of moths and other insects by bestrewing the articles with naphthalene, camphor, pepper and so forth when they are laid away for some time, is attended with numerous inconveniences, especially on account of the unpleasant smell of the substances in question. These can be avoided by the use of paper or linen prepared by a simple process in such a manner as to permanently resist insect attacks, and also atmospheric influences, so that they may be used in packing goods destined for consignment to a distance.

The process itself is principally based on the well-known disinfectant properties of formaldehyde, and on its capacity for forming a waterproof coating with the aid of casein.

Hence, if paper and similar materials or finished articles made from same, such as bags, wrappering, and the like, be soaked in a warmed solution of casein, which contains an admixture of wax, soap, caoutchouc solution, etc., for giving increased flexibility, and these impregnated articles be then dipped in a solution of formaldehyde, they will become covered with a thin film. So long as this is moist,

several sheets of the prepared paper, or of such paper and linen, can be fastened together to make a more or less thick and dense material. Finished cardboard goods, boxes, etc., can also be covered in this way with such moth paper. It is also advantageous to fasten cotton wool on to paper or linen by means of the formalin-casein adhesive or by sewing, and then impregnate the wadding with formaldehyde.

If, on the other hand, greater importance is attached to the waterproof character of the preparation, this result may be attained in various ways, for instance, by steeping the paper with a solution of paraffin in benzol, a solution of shellac and borax, alcoholic solutions of resin, or by coating with viscose (cellulose tetracetate), either in conjunction with dissolved casein or after treatment with the latter. Fine fabrics may be waterproofed by the same means or with the conjunction of alumina, aluminium mordants, ammoniacal copper oxide, oil, etc.; in any case, however, a copious amount of formaldehyde must be used. If the effect be found to have weakened by lapse of time, it can be renewed by the application of formalin (40 per cent. formaldehyde).

Materials rendered in this manner proof against germs, water and insects, are manifestly applicable to a large number of purposes. Among these may be mentioned the storing and conveyance of foodstuffs, especially in humid climates; also as wrappers for anatomical and zoological preparations, corpses and other objects liable to decomposition. Furthermore, they may replace the more expensive oiled linen wherever a light, but resistant, waterproof and cheap wrapping is needed. Special attention is called to the manufacture of impregnated paper bags, which would meet with a ready sale for storing clothes; also portfolios for documents and antiquities, such as lace, in museums and collections.



## PAINT REMOVER.

Of late the practice of removing paint by burning is falling into desuetude. At the same time, the caustic alkali preparations sold for this purpose are attended with numerous drawbacks, the ordinary substances of this class having to be applied several times over, owing to their tendency to run down from the smooth surface of the paint, so that their action is delayed. This tendency, however, may be prevented by mixing the alkali with a very thin solution of casein, in the proportion, say, of 5 parts of caustic soda, 10 of water and 1 of casein solution. The caustic soda is first dissolved in the water, and the casein solution is added until the preparation is of workable consistency. For use, the mass is stirred up well, laid on with a brush, and washed off, along with the remains of the paint, in about one to two hours' time. To enable this preparation to keep for some considerable time, it may receive an addition of  $\frac{1}{2}$  per cent. of carbolic acid and a few drops of some ethereal oil, such as oil of cloves, rosemary, etc.

## BEUSE'S SHOE POLISH.

Shoe polish may be made to give a greatly improved gloss by the addition of a solution of casein, prepared by boiling in water with borax or soda. At the same time the addition of iron resinate imparts the property of staining the leather a deep black, instead of merely forming a black coating.

The iron resinate is prepared by adding an aqueous solution of green vitriol (ferrous sulphate) to a resin soap obtained by boiling resin with soda. The other ingredients of the polish are as usual: ivory black, syrup or dextrose, fat or oil. A blue-black sheen may be imparted to fine polish by the addition of a little Paris blue dissolved in water.

The following is a typical recipe for these polishes:—

Casein . . . . .	16 parts by weight.
Soda crystals . . . . .	6 parts, dissolved in
Water . . . . .	48 parts, and mixed with
Ivory black . . . . .	145 „
Dextrose . . . . .	75 „
Olive oil . . . . .	12½ „
Iron resinate . . . . .	5 „

This should be further mixed with 5 parts of ferric cyanide, dissolved in 1 to 2 parts of oxalic acid and 5 of water, the whole being stirred in a suitable stirrer. For solid polishes, the proportion of solid ingredients is increased.

### CASEIN PHOTOGRAPHIC PLATES.

With the invention of the silver bromide dry plate, which rendered outdoor photography possible, arose the necessity for replacing the support (the glass plate) by some material which, whilst possessing the transparency of glass is free from the objectionable properties of fragility, weight and bulk.

Endeavours have been made to overcome this difficulty in various ways, but though films of celluloid, paper, mica and gelatine have been proposed in place of glass, celluloid alone has been able to hold its own for this purpose. Nevertheless, this substance also has its defects, being in the first place highly inflammable, subject to electrical discharges which spoil the photographic image, liable to curl in the various baths, and, finally, very dear in comparison with glass plates.

The use of casein for the purpose in question appears to have solved the difficulty of finding a material that is free from the above-mentioned inconveniences.

### WOOD-CEMENT ROOFING PULP.

This new roofing pulp has the advantage over tarred pulp in being fire- as well as water-proof, and of not softening

with heat. It is made of cellulose pulp board, painted over with the following composition :—

Slaked lime	:	.	.	.	.	.	.	100 parts.
Casein and sodium bicarbonate	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	10 „

the latter being dissolved in water, stirred up to a pap with the lime, and gradually thinned down to the consistency of syrup. Four applications are generally sufficient to produce a coating of the requisite thickness.

The sheets may also be dipped in the composition, the latter being correspondingly thinned down for this purpose. The waterproof character is increased, and a fine gloss imparted, by topping the finished article with a coating of shellac and borax solution.

#### CASK GLAZE OF CASEIN AND FORMALDEHYDE.

The wooden casks used for the transport and storage of wine, beer, etc., are liable to become infested with mould fungi and other bacteria when lying empty, and must therefore be carefully cleansed, before use again, with boiling water and some disinfectant, such as lime, etc., and then dried. Even then, no security exists against the contamination of the liquid contents, or at any rate against their acquiring a flavour due to the cask. In the case of beer barrels, it has long been the practice (in some parts of the Continent) to line them with pitch, which, however, is liable to crack and peel off, so that not only is the beer contaminated with fragments of pitch, but the cracks in the coating afford an excellent harbouring place for the development of bacteria. It is true that shellac dissolved in spirit has also been used for varnishing the interior of these casks ; but that process in turn has drawbacks which preclude its employment in many cases.

It is an essential condition of the good cask lining that the coating shall adhere strongly to the wood, and be in-

soluble in any of the liquids coming under consideration. It must not impart to them any taste or smell, and, finally, must form a smooth coating resembling glaze, without any tendency to crack or peel.

Such a preparation has been made by the Union Aktiengesellschaft für Chemische Industrie, of Vienna, in the form of a solution of casein and formaldehyde, which is claimed to be an efficient substitute for pitching, paraffining or varnishing beer and wine casks.

According to this patented process, the casks are lined with a small quantity of an ammoniacal solution of casein (glue and gelatine), containing a little formaldehyde, this mixture being shaken up in the cask for a short time and then allowed to drain. The casks are next dried by the admission of heated air, and are finally swilled out with formaldehyde solution, in order to render the film of casein perfectly insoluble.

Exhaustive experiments have demonstrated that the beer will keep, in the casks so treated, quite as well as in those lined with pitch.

The absolutely staunch casein coating prevents any loss of carbonic acid; the coating will not peel off from the cask staves; and when it has suffered any injury from mechanical influences, it may be easily repaired with casein solution. Being completely insoluble, there is no risk of the beer acquiring any flavour due to the absorption of casein.

The solution of casein and formaldehyde acts as an anti-septic; and the same property is possessed by the resulting coating, which helps to preserve both the contents and the material of the cask.

The casein coating is insoluble, not only in alcoholic liquids, such as wine, beer, etc., but also in acids and alkalis. Hence it can also be used for casks destined for the transport or storage of liquids belonging to these last-named classes.



## THE PREPARATION OF ARTISTS' CANVAS.

Large quantities of canvas are used by artists and scene painters. The material is mostly rough linen, more rarely jute, and requires—before being used for painting—to be coated with some composition that will convert the rough surface into a smooth one that is adapted to receive the paint. This operation is termed “priming,” and the material is then known as primed canvas.

The canvas is required to be perfectly smooth and to remain so without alteration. Canvas that would warp and get “out of true” would distort the painting, and thus cause the latter to lose its artistic value entirely. Since artists' canvas is almost invariably sold in condition ready for being stretched on a frame and painted upon, it is therefore advisable for the maker of this prepared canvas to commence operations by stretching it in a similar manner, so that the tension is the same in all directions. The priming composition is then applied to the surface by simply painting it on with a wide brush.

Some makers use for this purpose a composition consisting of chalk and driers, coloured grey by the addition of a dark pigment. The use of driers, however, cannot be recommended; and, indeed, it is probably owing to their employment that so many paintings are found to crack within a few years' time.

When the canvas is primed with a quick-drying varnish the prepared surface appears to be perfectly dry and suitable for painting on at the end of a few days, since good driers set hard very quickly on exposure to the air. This hardness, however, is merely superficial, the under layers of the composition remaining soft for a very long time and are only resinified very slowly. When this resinification has reached a certain stage the stratum of varnish contracts strongly and becomes cracked.

The pigments of the painting, which are firmly attached to the priming, are constrained to follow this contraction; and this phenomenon is first manifested by the disappearance of the gloss on the picture. Examination of such a picture with a strong magnifying-glass reveals the presence of innumerable fine cracks all over the surface; and the end of the picture can be predicted with certainty, namely, that it will eventually crack to such an extent as to become quite indistinct and worthless as a work of art.

There is, moreover, another very potent reason against the use of varnishes in preparing artists' canvas, namely, that many varnishes are made by the aid of lead preparations. It has already been remarked on several occasions that lead preparations are particularly susceptible to the action of sulphuretted hydrogen, which turns them black; and consequently paintings on such canvases will become darker coloured in course of time.

Many artists' colours in general use, such as cadmium yellow (*Jaune brilliant*) and vermilion, are, however, compounds of sulphur. When such sulphur compounds come in contact with a priming containing lead, it follows that they will undergo an entire change, often in a few years turning brown and even quite black. Hence, even when an artist carefully avoids the use of lead pigments, in order to increase the life of his work, his precautions are of no avail should he unhappily use canvas that has been primed with a composition containing lead varnish.

For this reason the use of casein for priming offers a series of noteworthy advantages; and it is especially indicated where the risk of cracking comes into consideration. A canvas prepared with casein is more durable and comparatively cheaper than one primed with linseed varnish, and only a little dearer than when distemper is used in priming.

Casein soluble in alkali or in water may be used, the

latter being preferable because prepared on a manufacturing scale. The casein powder is dissolved in the following manner:—

Thirty parts of clean water are heated in a pan to about 176° F. and then poured into the kneading and mixing machine shown in Fig. 11, which is fitted with an arrangement for heating the trough. The stirrers having been started, 5 parts of casein powder are run in by degrees, and in this way a uniform solution is obtained. It will not do to add too much powder at a time or to put the casein

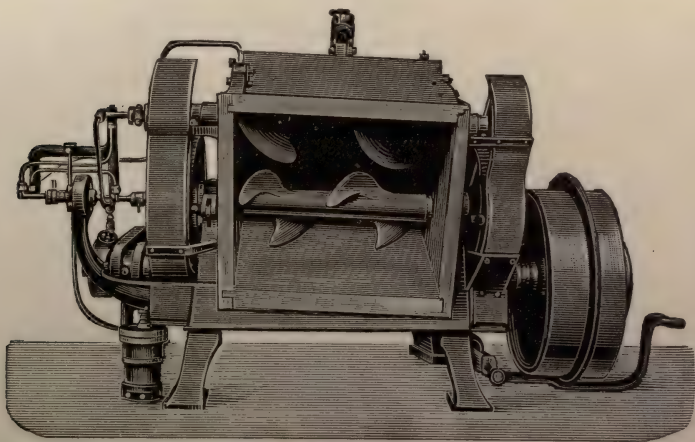


FIG. 11.—Werner and Pfeiderer's Kneader and Mixer with Heated Trough.

into the trough first and then the water, or a lumpy pap will be obtained instead of a thin solution. The warming of the trough throughout the operation will prevent the solution thickening too soon.

This solution is next applied evenly to the surface of the stretched canvas. When the coating is dry the next step is to apply the priming composition—a mixture of neutral wool fat, dissolved casein and the finest levigated chalk or lithopone. Drying oils and driers may also be added in moderate amount.

The neutral wool fat, which exudes from the glands in the skin of the sheep, and constitutes the grease permeating the wool, is met with in a purified state in commerce. It differs from vegetable and animal fats inasmuch as the contained fatty acids are not combined with glycerine, but with cholesterin and the so-called fatty alcohols. Thanks to this constitution the fat is better able to stand the influence of warmth, air and light than the other fats of animal or vegetable origin. It remains perfectly sound even after prolonged exposure to atmospheric influences, and unlike the glycerine fats it shows no increase of acidity, no rancidity. Another consequence of the peculiar composition of neutral wool fat is its high resistance to the action of alkalis and caustic alkaline earths, so that, under ordinary conditions, it is unsaponifiable. The neutral wool fats are miscible with water, and are able to absorb and permanently retain up to twice their own quantity of water—a valuable property when the incorporation of large quantities of water into a fatty mixture is in question. As a rule the neutral wool fats are among the most stable fats known, and their valuable qualities ensure them a progressively extending industrial future.

The elasticity and resisting properties of the mixture of casein and neutral wool fat render this composition specially adapted for grounding artists' canvas.

Another composition, suitable for photographers' backgrounds, is obtained by mixing cement or diatomaceous earth with casein solution. In this case also the durability of the priming can be increased by spraying it with a dilute solution of formaldehyde.

In the case of canvas for other decorative purposes, the power of resisting the action of the weather is a prominent necessity. The priming for this purpose may be prepared by stirring 18 parts of chalk and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  of earthy pigment to a pap with water. Ten to 14 parts of casein that have been



treated with alkali are next stirred in, and the whole is diluted with another 10 parts of water.

For priming canvas out of doors the following method is recommended: 10 parts of finely powdered casein soluble in water are intimately mixed with 10 parts of slaked lime and 90 of levigated chalk, and diluted with water to workable consistency.

### SOLIDIFYING MINERAL OIL.

Casein and formaldehyde play a special part in the solidification of petroleum and other mineral oils. The oil is treated with dissolved casein or an alkali salt of same, *e.g.*, sodium caseate. According to Helbing & Passmore's Patent Specification, the resulting compound is hardened with formaldehyde, and is then insoluble in water; it has no melting-point, but the petroleum can be recovered by distillation. The product is similar in colour to the petroleum used, but is less transparent.

### USES OF CASEIN IN PHOTOGRAPHY.

In connection with the employment of casein as a medium for photographic purposes, Dr. Otto Buss expresses himself in the following terms:—

When we consider the integral character of the medium as a factor of sensitised strata in photography generally, and especially in silver chloride printing-out papers, and the part it plays in the presence of silver salts of organic acids, as well as the extent to which it influences the print and the character of the photographic picture, we cannot regard as useless any endeavour to attain perfection by the use of fresh substances as media. Just as it would be erroneous to rest content with what has been already attained in this subject, and to take up the standpoint that the known media—albumin, gelatine, collodion, vegetable albumin, algic jellies,

resin, starch, etc.—fulfil all requirements, and afford sufficient means for the manifestation of the individuality of the photographer in the production of artistic effects, so also is the prospect certain that the means of artistic expression and technical advantages in photography can be widened by the adoption of new substances as media.

Among the numerous colloidal amorphous substances whose chemical and physical properties indicate the probability of their application as photographic media, a place in nearly the front rank is occupied by casein, which has already formed the subject of investigation for this purpose by various photographic chemists. Their experiments have remained unsuccessful, owing to the difficulty of overcoming the technical imperfections of casein strata for photographic purposes to an extent that could make their advantages apparent.

So far as these experiments have been made public and brought to the writer's knowledge, they were all undertaken with the object, *mutatis mutandis*, of dissolving casein in alkalis and employing this solution, together with the requisite quantity of chlorides to ultimately form silver chloride, to coat paper for sensitising with silver nitrate. These attempts therefore were directly allied to the albumin process, under the erroneous idea that casein being an albuminoid substance would behave similarly to egg albumin.

The writer has repeated and checked a number of these experiments, and found it impossible to obtain papers of any practical utility by the method in question. Pure casein was dissolved in alkalis, with the aid of warmth, both caustic alkalis (potash, soda and ammonia) and carbonates (sodium carbonate and bicarbonate) being used, the casein being stirred up with water and brought into solution by adding the dissolved alkalis. In some cases the resulting solutions were treated with common salt or ammonium chloride and filtered, so that uniform glossy layers could be obtained on

papers, either plain or surfaced with baryta. Flexibility was readily obtainable by the addition of glycerine to the casein solution. The dried papers were then sensitised in the usual way, both in neutral silver baths and in those containing citric acid. Nevertheless, although the conditions were varied in numerous ways, and the papers resembled albumin papers in many respects, the film softened, either occasionally in the toning bath or invariably in fixing or washing, and in some cases came off altogether, though this could be prevented by using an alum bath before fixing. Somewhat better results were obtained by using casein solutions hardened with formaldehyde, inasmuch as the papers then could be toned, fixed and washed. The papers had the same general character as albumin paper, without any advantages over the latter. When sensitised, even in an acid bath, their keeping properties were very poor, which, indeed, is not surprising in view of the presence of the formaldehyde reducing agent. Further attempts in the same direction were abandoned as hopeless; and those made with a view to using casein in the preparation of emulsions proved equally unsuccessful, silver caseate being invariably thrown down in large flakes, impossible to divide sufficiently fine by mechanical means. These experiments were also given up; and although it is not asserted that the use of alkaline solutions of casein in one or other of these directions is an impossible matter, it would seem that some technical device of a very different character to the usual methods of working will have to be adopted to ensure success; at any rate, the writer does not at present think it likely that a normal practical method will be discovered.

An explanation of the peculiar behaviour recorded above is afforded by the chemical conduct of casein. The substance may be regarded both as a base and as a dibasic acid, since it is insoluble in water, alcohol, ether, acetone and other

known solvents, whilst it furnishes salts both with metals and acids. The alkali caseates are readily soluble in water, whilst the compounds with the heavy metals, such as iron, copper, silver, etc., are thrown down as insoluble, amorphous, flocculent precipitates from the solutions of the alkali salts.

The dibasicity of casein is revealed by the fact that it dissolves to an acid solution when stirred up with water and carefully treated with a dissolved alkali, whilst, after neutrality is reached, a further quantity of alkali can be added before the same appears in excess, that is to say before the appearance of an alkaline reaction can be detected.

The alkali caseate will therefore act as a dibasic salt in presence of silver nitrate, normally with the formation of silver caseate (presumably containing two atoms of silver) and alkali nitrate; and this will invariably occur, no matter in what manner the casein and alkali are brought into solution. Silver caseate, however, is by far inferior in stability to silver albuminate, inasmuch as the silver caseate image is soluble in hypo.

On the other hand, casein dissolves in dilute acids, from which solution it can be reprecipitated by neutralisation with alkali, without decomposition. The same precipitate is obtained by the use of a large number of metallic salts, such as alkali chlorides, alkali sulphates, alkali nitrates, a number of salts of the heavy metals, etc.; and this peculiarity seemed to the writer to offer a prospect of success in using casein as a medium for photographic pellicles.

The success foreshadowed was eventually realised in the following manner. When casein is stirred up with water and dissolved in a weak solution of acid, *e.g.*, citric acid, by gentle heat, it forms a clear, gelatinous mass, which sets to a jelly on cooling. Physically, it behaves exactly like gelatine, and there is not the least difficulty in coating paper uniformly with the warmed solution. The coating sets im-



mediately and forms a glossy stratum, which, however, is still slightly soluble in water. To make it insoluble in water and weak acids, it is treated by floating or immersing the paper in a solution of common salt or ammonium chloride, etc., and this treatment does not deprive the stratum of its permeability to aqueous solutions. At the same time, the use of a chloride in this operation imparts to the stratum the chloride necessary for the subsequent formation of silver chloride, without eliminating the citric acid. It is easy, by suitably modifying the concentration of the chloride solution, to incorporate any desired quantity of chloride in the stratum; and since, as already mentioned, the original quantity of citric acid is left unaffected, or only washed out to a very slight extent by the chloride solution, it is possible in this way to adjust the relative proportions of chloride and citric acid to any desired extent. The paper prepared in this way will, of course, keep for any length of time when dry. Sensitising is effected, the same way as for albuminised paper, in a neutral or faintly acid silver bath; but the processes involved in the operation are evidently of a very different character to those occurring in the case of albuminised paper, or such as has been prepared with an alkaline solution of casein. It does not seem probable that insoluble, free casein and silver nitrate react with formation of silver caseate and nitric acid; and both the behaviour of the finished paper and the results of wet tests speak against the occurrence of this reaction. The reaction is more probably confined to the silver nitrate, the chloride and the citric acid alone, silver chloride and citrate being formed in the casein stratum, which itself remains chemically unaltered. The whole behaviour of the stratum favours this assumption, which is very difficult to prove chemically, both the casein and silver caseate being insoluble; for whilst the stratum obtained by means of casein, alkali and silver nitrate is

soluble when the print comes to be fixed in hypo, etc., that obtained in the manner just described remains perfectly intact and tough. The typical purple-brown colour of silver caseate could not be detected anywhere, the print having the same bluish or reddish purple tone as the gelatino-chloride or collodio-chloride papers. At the same time, the character of the prints more nearly resembled that of gelatine papers than albuminised papers. Alkali caseates and the water-soluble egg albumin of albuminised paper, on the other hand, react on silver nitrate to form silver albuminate and silver caseate respectively. (An analogous reaction may be mentioned in the behaviour of citric acid and silver nitrate, inasmuch as alkali citrate and silver nitrate furnish silver citrate in almost quantitative amount, whereas none is formed in the case of the free citric acid and silver nitrate.)

In this manner the utilisation of casein as a medium for photographic pellicles may be claimed to have been accomplished, inasmuch as a stratum of free casein is obtained which encloses the image-forming substances, silver chloride and silver citrate. The use of this method should certainly not be restricted to the preparation of chloride printing-out papers, but will probably find application in numerous other ways.

By using iodides to precipitate the casein it should be possible to obtain, by sensitising in an acid bath, silver iodide pellicles suitable for physical development; whilst the use of bromides would furnish silver bromide pellicles.

Casein stirred up in water can be dissolved in any weak acid by gentle heat, furnishing a hyaline, gelatinous solution. This solution poured over a glass plate, celluloid film, paper or the like, while warm, will set on cooling and dry with a brilliant gloss. The dried film, which is still slightly soluble in water, may be floated or immersed in a solution of any

metallic haloid, and thereby rendered insoluble, a sufficient quantity of the haloid salt for the formation of the silver haloid being incorporated in the casein stratum at the same time. Chlorides, bromides and iodides, or mixtures of same can be used in this way. The resulting stratum is as tough as leather, whilst permeable to liquids, and it can be rendered as flexible as desired by adding glycerine. It may be sensitised by a neutral or faintly acid solution of silver nitrate, inasmuch as this latter reacts on the metallic haloid in the stratum, to form the corresponding silver haloid. According as the casein has been fixed with chlorides or bromides, the product will be either a faintly sensitive chloride printing-out casein stratum or a highly sensitive bromide stratum suitable for development. The method, which is specially adapted for printing-out papers, is patented. These papers, which may be advantageously prepared by the aid of baryta, exhibit several valuable properties, which fill a long-felt want in practice.

They print fairly quickly, in agreeable tones, and are easily toned in a sulphocyanide bath, which gives warm, pure tones, free from double toning. Neutral combined toning and fixing baths can also be used. Even in warm water the stratum remains tough and leathery, without softening, and it is perfectly flexible, so that the prints do not curl in the bath. The finished prints will resist mechanical influences (scratching, rubbing, scouring, etc.) in a remarkable degree, and their sensitiveness to light is thoroughly good. The prints show soft, delicate gradation, somewhat softer and with finer definition than albumin prints, without exhibiting the hardness of gelatine or celloidin emulsion papers. Hence the casein papers combine in themselves the pictorial softness and the flexibility of the albumin papers, with the permanence and improved definition, together with the extensive range of toning methods enjoyed by the celloidin

and gelatine emulsion papers, without the tenderness and susceptibility to temperature of the latter, both in the wet and dry state.

Even if papers prepared in this manner cannot be introduced into practice, the foregoing observations at any rate indicate the way in which the most readily available albuminoid, casein, can be utilised as a medium for photographic purposes.

#### CASEIN OINTMENT.

To prepare a drying ointment, pure, dry, pulverised casein is dissolved in a mixture of equal parts of dilute ammonia and glycerine. After heating the solution until the ammonia has been expelled, the solution may be mixed with fats to form an emulsion, which, when applied as an ointment to the skin, soon dries to an elastic, cooling layer.

#### CLARIFYING GLUE WITH CASEIN.

According to Hewitt (New York), glue can be clarified by an addition of casein, which is afterwards thrown down by neutralisation (and warmth, if necessary), leaving the glue perfectly clear, free from fat, colourless and inodorous.

#### CASEIN IN SOAPMAKING.

The frequency with which casein is offered for use in soapmaking has drawn the attention of interested parties to the matter, and led to exhaustive experiments in order to determine whether it is really suitable for this purpose.

In Austria the use of casein in soapmaking is protected by Letters Patent. The process is a development of the well-known milk soaps; and, just as an addition of cows' milk is considered to be an improvement in these soaps, so also is, to some extent, the use of casein in toilet soaps, since it cannot be regarded as merely an adjunct designed to load or cheapen the product, except, perhaps, in a very restricted



degree. On the other hand, it has been proved that toilet soaps containing casein have behaved better than those without such addition, and that the added casein acts beneficially on the perfumes used by rendering them more pronounced and fixing them to a certain extent. Moreover, albuminoid washes have a beneficial effect on the skin, so that the use of casein seems commendable.

Casein being insoluble in water, it must be first prepared by combining it with alkalis like borax, calcined soda, sodium bicarbonate or caustic soda.

From the practice of working up cows' milk into toilet soap to the use of casein for the same purpose is but a step.

In places where ample supplies of moist casein are available to the soapmaker, the method of working is fairly simple. The casein is placed in a pan fitted with stirrers, and dissolved in one of the aforesaid alkali compounds, with constant stirring, the solution being added to the finished soap.

To bring commercial dry casein into suitable condition for the same purpose it must be mixed with water containing the requisite alkali in solution. Casein will absorb large quantities of water, and it is on this property that its use as a method of cheapening soap is based. This applies more to curd soaps than to toilet soaps, especially when the Schnetzer moulding machine or the Klumpp cooling press is used. In the case of toilet soaps, *i.e.*, stock soaps for milled soap, such a large proportion of the moisture evaporates in the drying apparatus that the calculated results are reduced to about one-third, though this is still worthy of note in view of the other advantages presented by the use of casein.

As already stated, the casein is intimately mixed with the aqueous solution of alkali. The resulting, somewhat sticky mass, however, must not have an alkaline reaction towards phenolphthalein, though, nevertheless, all the casein must be in solution. Even during this stage of the operation a strong

smell of ammonia will be noticeable, and this increases when the mass is introduced into the hot soap. At the same time the liberation of carbonic acid is stimulated by the heat, and care must be taken that the soap does not rise and run over the top of the pan.

Another advantage of casein soaps is their greater lathering power, which is peculiarly desirable in the case of shaving soaps.

For these reasons Antony recommends all soapmakers to give casein a trial, as it will probably prove useful to many.

#### CASEIN-ALBUMOSE SOAP.

This soap is prepared from tallow and olive oil by saponification with a mixture of caustic soda and caustic potash. After salting-out with potassium chloride, a preparation of casein and albumose is incorporated with the soap, which is then superfatted to the extent of 7 per cent. This soap may be used in place of casein ointment.

#### CASEIN IN SHEETS, BLOCKS, ETC.

Casein may be obtained in perfectly homogeneous sheets, blocks, etc., characterised by solidity, flexibility and elasticity, in the following manner:—

Crushed casein is stirred up well with water so as to be thoroughly permeated therewith and to form a thin pap. The surplus water is then drained off, the product dried and allowed to shrink.

#### EBERHARDT AND MIERISCH'S SOLUBLE CASEIN.

A perfectly soluble, fat-free casein can be obtained by centrifugalising skim milk at about 104° to 113° F., treating it with caustic potash or soda, passing it through the separator again until no more fat is eliminated, and then precipitating the casein by means of an acid, *e.g.*, dilute sulphuric

acid, or better still, by an acid forming soluble lime salts, such as ethylsulphuric acid, lactic acid or acetic acid. The precipitate is washed and dissolved in a solution of alkali. The entire process is then repeated several times over, the casein being finally dissolved in ammonia, treated with benzine or chloroform to extract fat, and then filtered through diatomaceous earth or the like. The resulting solution may be used *per se* or treated with an acid to throw down the casein.

#### WATERPROOF CASEIN.

When a *circa* 5 per cent. solution of sodium caseate is mixed with formaldehyde no coagulation occurs, the solution remaining clear and fluid for a long time. If this solution be poured out on a sheet of glass, zinc, paper, etc., or left to dry, an insoluble film of casein is obtained.

Another way is to prepare a solution containing about 100 parts of casein and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  parts of caustic soda in 1,000 of water, to which 15 parts of a 40 per cent. solution of formaldehyde are then added. This mixture, which remains perfectly clear, is next poured out on a sheet of glass, zinc or paper and evaporated or dried. In order to produce a waterproof film from ammonium caseate, a solution is prepared containing about 100 parts of casein, and 10 of a 10 per cent. solution of ammonia, in 2,000 parts. About 30 parts of a 40 per cent. solution of formaldehyde are added, and the casein is dried as stated above.

This waterproof casein may be used in various industries, for instance, photography, papermaking and the preparation of surgical bandages.

## CHAPTER XI.

### CASEIN COMPOUNDS.

IN view of the extensive general application of casein it is not surprising that many attempts have been made to obtain compounds of this substance with chemical elements, for a variety of purposes. In addition to those already described are a number of others, which, together with their mode of preparation, are given below.

To prepare compounds of casein with *iodine* the two substances are intimately mixed and warmed. The resulting products are used in medicine (German patent, 79,926).

Dr. Bernstein prepares *albumose* and *peptone* from milk casein by bacterial agency.

Solid compounds, soluble in water, are obtained from casein with hydrobromic and hydriodic acids of medium strength by stirring the substances together; or by dissolving the casein in the dilute or concentrated acid (German patent, 124,232, 1900), and precipitating the resulting casein compound. In therapeutic value these compounds come between the metallic bromides or iodides and the corresponding free acids.

According to J. Just's American patent of 4th February, 1902, a casein phosphate can be prepared by adding to an aqueous solution of phosphoric acid a portion of the necessary quantity of casein, heating the mixture and concentrating it to syrup. The remainder of the casein is then added and well mixed with the mass, which is finally dried.



A *medicinal food* is prepared by the patent process of the Chemische Fabrik Rhenania, in which a solution of casein in very weak phosphoric acid is precipitated by a primary phosphate, the precipitate being freed from the excess of acid by washing with a solution of the same phosphate.

With *salicylates* casein forms soluble compounds, which should find an application in therapeutics by reason of the readiness with which they are absorbed and their insignificant irritation of the mucous membrane of the stomach.

To prepare water-soluble compounds of casein with *alkaloids*, the latter—in alcoholic or other solution—are allowed to act on dry or moist acid-free casein.

According to Knoll & Co.'s patent, compounds of casein with an organic acid containing phosphorus and nitrogen are obtained by digesting casein with pepsin chloride, neutralising the filtrate with sodium carbonate, and treating it with iron-ammonium alum. On heating, the iron compound of caseic acid separates out. This iron salt is soluble in the intestinal juices.

Soluble compounds of casein with *lithium salts* form the subject of a patent by C. Wendt, of Stollberg.

To prepare compounds of casein with heavy metals, such as *mercury*, *silver*, and iron, solutions of neutral alkali caseates are treated with salts of mercury or silver, and precipitated with alcohol or concentrated *in vacuo*. According to an additional patent of the Chemische Fabrik Pfersee, Augsburg, the albumin compound may also be suspended in alcohol or acetone and boiled with aqueous or alcoholic solutions of the heavy-metal salts. The mercury-, silver-, and iron-compounds thus obtained possess properties which seem to render them useful, both technically and medically.

Among the *silver* compounds of casein Röhmann and Hirschstein have discovered a silver caseate, which they

term "argentumcasein". This is able to form salts and contains silver in complex combination, not as an ion.

Compounds of *arsenic* and casein are prepared in the same way as those of the heavy metals, and like them are used medicinally.

*Alkali* salts and the *potassium* salt of casein are obtained as dry powders by concentrating, *in vacuo*, solutions of casein in caustic alkalis, alkali carbonates, sodium phosphate or milk of lime. According to Imray's patent, a solid silver-casein compound of this kind, which does not furnish any precipitate when its aqueous solution is treated with albumin or salt, is obtained by mixing a solution of silver nitrate [or other salt of silver with a neutral solution of an alkali caseate, and evaporating the mixture to dryness *in vacuo*.

The Casein Company of America (U.S. Patent, 717,085) prepares a casein compound that forms a thin solution with a relatively small quantity of water. This is effected by incorporating oxalates with casein, *e.g.*, in the proportion of 2 parts of potassium oxalate and 15 of powdered borax to 100 of dry casein, the whole being thoroughly mixed.

A further patent relates to the production of *oxidised casein* by dissolving an oxidising agent in about its own weight of water, and then rapidly stirring in the casein to ensure intimate mixture. Ammonium persulphate is the oxidising agent preferably used.

An *insoluble casein compound* is prepared, according to B. Dunham's patent, by mixing about 15 parts of borax and 85 of commercial casein, dissolving this in 400 parts of water, treating the solution with about 15 parts of hexamethylene-tetramine and leaving the liquid to evaporate, the dry product being then exposed to heat and moisture. The preparation is suitable for replacing egg albumin.

Kalle & Co. (Biebrich) have patented a process for pre-

paring compounds of *Acrolein* with starch, dextrin, gums, or proteids, *e.g.*, casein, for therapeutic purposes.

Casein acts as a weak acid and forms salts which are neutral toward phenolphthalein, but alkaline towards litmus. By Liebrecht and Röhmnn's patented process not only are these neutral lime and sodium compounds prepared, but also solid casein compounds of alkalis and alkaline earths, with an acid reaction. To do this the acidity of the casein is determined with phenolphthalein, and the casein is then dissolved in the calculated quantity of alkali and the solution concentrated *in vacuo*. The resulting neutral compounds are well adapted for painting, whilst the compounds acid to phenolphthalein are of special importance for dietetic and similar purposes.

The *ammonium* compound and the *hydrochloric acid* compound of casein can be prepared (German patent, 84,682) direct in the solid form by passing gaseous ammonia or hydrochloric acid over finely powdered dry casein; or by suspending the latter in some liquid (*e.g.*, alcohol, ether, ligroïn or benzol) in which it is practically insoluble, and treating it with one of the aforesaid gases. The resulting compounds are in the form of white powder, stable in air, and dissolve to a clear, almost tasteless, solution in water.

The feature of Dr. Dojen's process for preparing a compound of casein and *formaldehyde* is that pulverised casein is digested with formaldehyde, then dried, treated with dilute caustic alkali and digested for a long time at ordinary temperature with a concentrated solution of formaldehyde. The product has the bactericidal properties of formaldehyde without its irritating action.

According to German patent 98,177, a dilute aqueous solution of sodium or other *glycerophosphate* is mixed with an excess of casein at a temperature of 30° to 40° C.; and after standing for twelve hours, the filtrate is concentrated *in vacuo* at 40° to 50°.





## INDEX.

### A.

Acetic acid, action of, on casein, 101.  
 — — as a coagulant of milk, 9.  
 Acid properties of casein, 28, 143, 144.  
 Acids, action of, on casein, 29, 31, 101.  
 Acrolein compound with casein, 155.  
 Adhesives, casein, 71-85.  
 Albumin substitutes, 115, 116.  
 Albumose from casein, 152.  
 Alkali salts of casein, 154.  
 Alkalies, action of, on casein, 22, 23, 74, 76.  
 — as casein precipitants, 98, 99.  
 — as solvents for casein, 26.  
 Alkaloid precipitants of casein, 30.  
 Alkaloids, casein compounds with, 153.  
 Aluminium acetate in casein masses, 90, 94.  
 American casein factories, 27.  
 Ammonia, action of, on casein, 21.  
 Ammonium caseate, 29.  
 — compound of casein, 155.  
 — persulphate, action of, on casein, 154.  
 — sulphate as a casein precipitant, 29.  
 Analysis of casein paint, 43.  
 Anti-radiation and anti-corrosive composition, 89.  
 Application of casein paints, 41, 64-70.  
 Argentine, 108.  
 "Argentumcasein," 154.  
 Arsenic compounds as adjuncts to casein, 72.  
 — compounds with casein, 154.

Artists' canvas, priming, 137-41.  
 — colours, casein, 64.  
 Asbestos in casein masses, 89.  
 — paper, waterproof, 127-29.

### B.

Baking preparations, casein, 121.  
 Balsams in casein paint, 68.  
 Barium chloride as casein precipitant, 92.  
 Barnodai's plastic mass, 93.  
 Beissier on casein tempera, 69.  
 Bellamy's method of making casein glue, 23, 72.  
 Bernstein's baking preparation, 121.  
 Besana's method of making casein, 24.  
 Beuse's shoe polish, 133.  
 Bimbi on nutrium, 119.  
 Bind, casein, for meerschaum, 81.  
 Binding medium, compounding the, 62-64. See also Medium.  
 Black casein paint, 45, 46, 49, 64.  
 Blue casein paint, 45, 46, 49, 64.  
 Boiled oil substitute, casein, 50, 52.  
 Bolder's liquid casein glue, 73.  
 Bone, imitation, 90, 91.  
 Borax and casein cement, 82.  
 — — — glue, 77.  
 — as a casein solvent, 96.  
 Bread from flour and curd, 121.  
 Bromine compounds with casein, 152.  
 Brown casein paints, 49, 64.  
 Brushes for casein paint, 67.  
 Buss on casein in photography, 141-48.

## C.

- Calcium caseate, 29.  
 — salts, action of, on rennet coagulation, 31.  
 Calico printing, casein medium for, 113.  
 Calsomine wash, 50.  
 Camphor in casein putty, 81.  
 — — celluloid substitute, 96.  
 Canvas, priming, 137-41.  
 Carmichael's dressing preparation, 109.  
 Casein adhesives. See Adhesives.  
 — cement. See Cements.  
 — Company's casein oxalate, 154.  
 — — celluloid composition, 95.  
 — — solution, 79.  
 — compounds with :—  
   Acrolein, 155.  
   Alkali, 154.  
   Alkaloids, 153.  
   Ammonium, 155.  
   Arsenic, 154.  
   Bromine, 152.  
   Formaldehyde, 155.  
   Glycerophosphates, 155.  
   Hydrochloric acid, 155.  
   Iodine, 152.  
   Iron, 153.  
   Lithium, 153.  
   Mercury, 153.  
   Potassium, 154.  
   Phosphoric acid, 152.  
   Salicylates, 153.  
   Silver, 153.  
 — glue, Bellamy's, 23. See also Glue.  
 — in sheets, blocks, etc., 150.  
 — medium. See Medium.  
 — paint. See Paint.  
 — oxalates, 154.  
 — phosphate for baking, 121.  
 Casein-silicate paints, 47, 49.  
 Caseinogen, 30.  
 Caseogum, 106.  
 Cask glaze, casein, 135, 136.  
 Celluloid compared with galalith, 103.  
 — substitute, 33, 96.  
 — plastic mass, 93.  
 Cellulose and casein composition, 94.  
 — substitute, fireproof, 94.  
 Cement, casein and borax, 82.

- Cement, casein and lime, 84.  
 — — — soda, 83.  
 — — — water-glass, 83.  
 — — for glass and porcelain, 81, 83, 84.  
 — — — metals, 82.  
 — — — stone, 85.  
 — — paint, 56.  
 — — Wenk's, 83.  
 — in binding media, 63.  
 — "pitch barm," 84.  
 — washable for deal boards, 83.  
 Centrifugal separators, 10, 11.  
 Chalk, white casein paint, 45, 46.  
 Chemische Fabrik's method of loading silk, 114.  
 Chevallott's waterproofing process, 113.  
 Chialva & Dupont's fixative, 68, 69.  
 China bark as a casein precipitant, 72.  
 Cie. Française à Celluloid's plastic mass, 93.  
 Citrates as casein solvents, 122.  
 Composition and properties of casein, 28-34.  
 Cold-water paints, casein, 36.  
 — — — in powder, 44.  
 — — — paint, Ring's, 52.  
 Colouring matters, fixing, 110.  
 Colour lake, casein, 55.  
 — printing, casein in, 105-14.  
 Copper sulphate as a casein precipitant, 32.  
 Cotton fabrics, casein dressing for, 107.  
 — fixing zinc white on, 112.  
 Crosspietsch's adhesive, 74.  
 Curd, bread from flour and, 121.  
 — breaking, 10.  
 — drying, 12-17.  
 — glue, 18.  
 — mills, 10.  
 — purifying, 17, 18.  
 — rolls, Sell's, 122.  
 — washing, 12.  
 Cutch as a casein precipitant, 72.

## D.

- Determination of casein, 34.  
 Dibasicity of casein, 144.

Dickmann's wall and floor covering, 89.  
 Dojen's casein-formaldehyde compound, 155.  
 Dreher on casein colour lake, 55.  
 Dressing casein, for textiles, 107.  
 — waterproof, 111.  
 Dunham's insoluble casein compound, 154.  
 — method of making insoluble casein, 32.  
 — plastic mass, 93.  
 Durability of casein paintings, 70.  
 Drying casein, 25.  
 — flue for casein, 25, 26.  
 — machines for curd, 12-17.  
 — properties of casein paint, 42, 46.  
 Dyeing, fixing casein in, 110.

**E.**

Eberhardt & Mierisch's soluble casein, 150.  
 Ebony, imitation, 102.  
 Enamel paint, casein, 43.  
 Emulsifiable casein, 120.  
 Ethylsulphuric acid as a casein precipitant, 22.  
 "Eucasein," 29.  
 Eulactol, 117.

**F.**

Façade paint, casein, 43.  
 Fats, paper flasks for, 129.  
 Fibre, fixing casein on the, 110.  
 Fillings for casein masses, 92.  
 Finishing, casein, for textiles, 105-14.  
 Fireproof cellulose substitute, 94.  
 — roofing pulp, 134.  
 Fixatives for casein paint, 68, 69.  
 Fixing casein on the fibre, 110.  
 — insoluble colouring matters, 110.  
 Fleischman on whey, 9.  
 Floor covering, casein, 89.  
 Food, medicinal, from casein, 153.  
 Foodstuffs, casein, 115-22.  
 Formaldehyde, action of on casein, 32, 33, 34, 111, 131, 135, 151.  
 — as a fixative, 69.  
 — compound with casein, 155.

Formaldehyde, fixing zinc white on cotton with, 112.  
 — in binding media, 63, 64.  
 — — casein glue, 76.  
 — — — paint, 53.  
 — — — masses, 95, 102.  
 Formolactin paint, 52, 53.  
 Franquet's celluloid substitute, 96.  
 Frescoes, painting on canvas, 67, 68.  
 Fresco painting, casein, 60, 61.

**G.**

Galactogen, 116.  
 Galalith, 33, 97-104.  
 — absorption of water by, 103.  
 — articles made from, 102.  
 — as substitute for jet, marble, ebony, etc., 102.  
 — comparison with celluloid, 103.  
 — elasticity of, 103.  
 — hardness of, 103.  
 — insulating properties of, 103, 104.  
 — low conductivity of, 103.  
 — preparation of, 97-101.  
 — pigments for, 102.  
 — resistance to reagents, 103.  
 — sp. gr. of, 103.  
 — unflammability of, 104.  
 Gerhardt's fresco process, 61, 69.  
 Gesellschaft's lime tempera, 70.  
 Glass, casein cement for, 81, 83, 84.  
 Glauber salt as a casein fixative, 110.  
 Glue, casein, 71.  
 — — and borax, 78.  
 — — for cardboard boxes, 79.  
 — — — match-making, 80.  
 — — in flakes, 73.  
 — — liquid, 73, 77.  
 — — powdered, 77, 80.  
 — clarifying, with casein, 148.  
 — curd, 18.  
 — in casein paints, 37.  
 — waterproof, 76.  
 Glutamic acid in casein, 28, 31.  
 "Glutin" glaze, 106.  
 Glycerophosphates, casein compounds with, 155.  
 Green casein paint, 45, 46, 49, 64.  
 Grey casein paints, 49, 50.  
 Guttman's nutrient milk flour, 117.

## H.

- Hall's casein glue, 76.  
 — method of preparing casein, 19.  
 — paper-coating preparation, 126.  
 — synthetic milk, 120.  
 Hardening casein masses, 92.  
 Hassack on galalith, 101, 102.  
 Hatmaker's casein phosphate, 121.  
 — method of preparing casein, 19.  
 Haubold's centrifugal machine, 11.  
 Heat of combustion of casein, 31.  
 Heim's argentine, 108.  
 Hewitt on clarifying glue, 148.  
 Higgins's casein food, 122.  
 Hoppe-Seyler's method of making casein, 24.  
 Horn's clear casein solution, 126.  
 Horn substitute from casein, 34.  
 Horny casein mass, 92.  
 Hydrochloric acid compound with casein, 155.

## I.

- Insoluble casein for papermaking and photography, 32.  
 Insulating preparation, casein, 88, 91, 94.  
 Iodine, casein compounds with, 152.  
 Iron caseate preparation, 153.  
 Iron, casein paints for, 46, 47.  
 Ivory, imitation, 87.

## J.

- Jeromin's casein, adhesive, 74, 75.  
 Jet, imitation, 102.  
 Jolles on albumin substitutes, 116.  
 Jung, Brecher & Kittel's insulating preparation, 88.  
 Just's casein phosphate, 152.  
 — method of making casein, 27.

## K.

- Kalle & Co.'s acrolein-casein compound, 154.  
 Kay & Schoen's method of fixing zinc white, 113.  
 Keratin and casein plastic mass, 91.

- Kieselguhr in binding medium, 63.  
 Kirchner on milk, 1.  
 Kistory's casein paint, 45.  
 Knoll & Co.'s organic casein compounds, 153.

## L.

- Lactarin, 26, 116.  
 Lavender oil in casein paint, 51.  
 Leather imitation, 90.  
 Lehner's casein putties, 80-83.  
 Lilienthal's plastic mass, 88.  
 Lime and casein cement, 84.  
 — in casein masses, 106.  
 — — — paint, 65.  
 Limeproof pigments, 40.  
 Limewashes with casein, 35.  
 Linen fabrics, casein dressing for, 108.  
 Linke on binding media, 63.  
 Linoleum, imitation, 90.  
 Linseed oil in casein paint, 51.  
 Lithium compound with casein, 153.  
 Lithopone in casein paint, 51.  
 Loading silk, 114.  
 — textile fabrics, 109, 110.  
 Lysin in casein, 28.

## M.

- Magnesia, casein-, 113.  
 Magnesium silicate in casein paint, 50.  
 — sulphate as a casein precipitant, 29, 31.  
 Marble, imitation, 102.  
 "Marble Lime" paint, 39.  
 Martin on casein fresco paint, 60.  
 Medium, casein for calico printing, 113.  
 — for casein paint, 62-64.  
 — proportion to pigment, 65, 66.  
 Meerschbaum, casein bind for, 81.  
 Mercerised crêpe, casein for, 112.  
 Mercury compounds with casein, 153.  
 Metachromotype paper, 124.  
 Metals, casein cement for, 82.  
 Mierisch & Eberhardt's method of making casein, 22.  
 Milk albumin, Riegel's, 118.



- Milk, casein content of, 2.
- composition of, 1.
- curdling, 2, 3, 7-9.
- flour, 117.
- food, Ramage's, 120.
- Hall's synthetic, 120.
- paints, 48.

Mineral oil, solidifying with casein, 141.

Mixers for casein masses, 139.

Mixing casein paints, 38.

Molecular weight of casein, 28, 29.

Mould, preventing, in casein paint, 65.

## N.

Nitrocellulose and casein compounds, 95, 96.

Nutrium, 119.

## O.

Oak bark as a casein precipitant, 72.

Ochre casein paint, 45, 46.

Oils in casein paint, 68.

— paper flasks for, 129.

Ointment, casein, 148.

Organic acids as casein precipitants, 30.

Origin and preparation of casein, 1-27.

Oxidised casein, 154.

## P.

Packing casein, 21.

— casein paints, 40.

Paint remover, 133.

Paints, casein, 35-57.

— — black, 45, 46, 49, 64.

— — blue, 45, 46, 49, 64.

— — brown, 49, 64.

— — brushes for, 67.

— — chalk white, 45, 46.

— — cold-water, 36, 44, 52.

— — enamel, 43.

— — façade, 43.

— — for bags, barrels, etc., 55.

— — — — iron, 46, 47.

— — green, 45, 46, 49, 64.

Paints, casein, grey, 49, 50.

— — Kistory's, 45.

— — lime in, 65.

— — linseed oil in, 51.

— — lithopone in, 51.

— — magnesium silicate in, 50.

— — "marble lime," 39.

— — Martin on fresco, 60.

— — medium for, 62-64.

— — milk, 48.

— — mixing, 38.

— — mould preventing in, 65.

— — ochre, 45, 46.

— — oils in, 68.

— — petroleum in, 51.

— — pigments for, 64.

— — quick-drying, 51.

— — red, 45, 46, 64.

— — Roman cement in, 56.

— — sodium tungstate in, 107, 125.

— — talc in, 50.

— — thinning down, 46.

— — varnish for, 68.

— — wall, 45, 89.

— — waterproof, for cards, 54.

— — white, 45, 46, 49, 50, 64.

— — woodwork, 46, 47.

— — yellow, 45, 46, 49, 64.

Paper flasks, 129.

— industry, casein in the, 123-32.

Paracasein, formation of, 30.

Passburg's rotary curd drier, 15.

— vacuum curd drier, 16.

Pellicles, photographic, of casein, 144-48.

Peptone from casein, 152.

Petroleum as a diluent of casein paint, 51.

Pfannhauser pan for casein making, 5.

Phosphoric acid compounds with casein, 152.

Photographer's backgrounds, 140.

Photographic plates, casein, 134.

Photography, casein in, 141-48, 151.

Pigments for casein paints, 36, 37, 40, 44, 48, 64.

— — galalith, 102.

"Pitch barm" cement, 84.

Plasmon, 119.

Plaster for casein painting, 59, 60.

Plastic articles, casein, 95.

— masses, casein, 86-104.

Pokorny on coagulation of milk, 9.

Porcelain, casein cement for, 81, 83, 84.  
 Portland cement in casein masses, 89.  
 Potassium bichromate in casein paints, 37.  
 — compound with casein, 154.  
 Preparation of casein, 2-27.  
 — — — paint, 64-70.  
 Preparing casein adhesives, 72, 73.  
 — surfaces for casein paint, 41.  
 — the ground for casein paint, 58-60.  
 Printing colour with metallic lustre, 109.  
 Putties, casein, 71-85.

## Q.

Quick-drying casein paint, 51.

## R.

Ramage's milk food, 120.  
 Red casein paints, 45, 46, 64.  
 Renken's method of using glue, 80.  
 Rennet, action of, on milk, 7, 30, 31.  
 — as a casein precipitant, 106.  
 — — — paint, 68.  
 Rhenania Co.'s casein food, 153.  
 Richard's binding medium, 63.  
 Riegel's method of precipitating casein, 22.  
 — milk albumin, 118.  
 Ring's cold-water paint, 52.  
 Roman cement in casein paint, 56.  
 Rotary curd-drying cylinder, 14.  
 Ruprecht's method of preparing casein, 20.

## S.

Salicylates, casein compounds with, 153.  
 Salts as casein precipitants, 29.  
 Sanatogen, 117.  
 Schreiber on casein as a food, 119.  
 Sell's curd rolls, 122.  
 Shoe polish, casein, 133.  
 Silver caseate in photography, 144-46.

Silver compounds with casein, 153.  
 Silk, loading, 114.  
 Sizing paper with casein, 124.  
 — textile fabrics, 109, 110.  
 Slaked lime in binding media, 63.  
 Soap, casein-albumose, 150.  
 Soapmaking, casein in, 148-50.  
 Soda and casein cement, 83.  
 Soda, caustic, as a casein precipitate, 98, 99.  
 Sodium arsenate in casein glue, 23.  
 — chloride as a casein precipitant, 29, 31.  
 — fluoride as a casein solvent, 31.  
 — silicate in casein paints, 47.  
 — sulphate as a casein precipitant, 29.  
 — tungstate in casein masses, 107, 125.  
 Softening textile fabrics, 109, 110, 111.  
 Soluble casein, 21, 22, 26, 79, 150.  
 — — dry, 23.  
 — — compounds with citrates, 122.  
 Solvents for casein, 105.  
 Spitteler's galalith process, 97.  
 — method of preparing casein, 20.  
 Spitteler & Krische's horn substitute, 34.  
 Stannous chloride in casein masses, 108.  
 Stencil paste, casein, 55, 56.  
 Stone, casein cement for, 85.  
 Stopping, casein, 84.  
 Storing casein paint, 66, 67.  
 Strontia in casein masses, 88.  
 Sulphuric acid as a coagulant of milk, 9.  
 Sumach as a casein precipitant, 72.  
 Surgical bandages, casein for, 151.  
 Szekely's method of making casein, 23.

## T.

Talc in casein paint, 50.  
 Tannic acid as a casein precipitant, 78, 106.  
 Tannin as a casein precipitant, 72.  
 — for coating casein cement, 82.  
 — in casein cement, 83.  
 — — — paints, 37.  
 Technics of casein painting, 58-70.

Tempera painting with casein, 69.  
 Textile industry, casein in the, 105-14.  
 Thinning down casein paints, 46.  
 Tin acetate in casein lakes, 55.  
 — tetrachloride in casein lakes, 55.  
 Trojel's boiled oil substitute, 50.  
 Tryptophane in casein, 28.  
 Tyrosin in casein, 28, 31.

## U.

Union Aktiengesellschaft's cask glaze, 136.  
 Utensils for preparing casein, 4, 5, 6.

## V.

Varnish, casein, 45.  
 — glossy, for casein paint, 68.  
 Vereinigte Gummiwaarenfabrik process of making galalith, 33.

## W.

Wall covering, casein, 89.  
 — paints, casein, 45.  
 — paper, washable, 33.  
 Washable drawing and writing paper, 130.  
 Water-glass and casein cement, 83.  
 — in casein glue, 75.  
 Waterproof casein, 151.  
 — glue, 76.

Waterproof paint for cards, 54.  
 — paper, 123, 125, 127.  
 — roofing pulp, 134.  
 Waterproofing casein masses, 94.  
 — paper with casein, 131.  
 — preparation, 111.  
 — process, Chevallott's, 113.  
 Wenk's casein cement, 83.  
 Werner & Pfleiderer's mixer, 139.  
 — — — sifting and mixing mills, 38, 39.  
 Whey, 8, 9.  
 White casein paints, 45, 46, 49, 50, 64.  
 "White Portland cement" for frescoes, 61.  
 Wild-cherry bark as a casein precipitant, 72.  
 Wood-cement roofing pulp, 134.  
 Woodwork casein paint, 46, 47.  
 Wool fat in priming composition, 140.  
 Wrappering, paper, for food, etc., 131.

## Y.

Yarns, dressing, 109, 110.  
 Yellow casein paint, 45, 46, 49, 64.

## Z.

Zamardi on sizing paper, 124.  
 Zinc white, fixing, with formaldehyde, 112.







Best and most reliable  
source of supply for

**CASEIN**

**Edwin Cooper & Co., Ltd.**

*Oil and Chemical Dept.*

**86, Leadenhall Street,  
LONDON, E.C.**

Telephone Nos. :  
3301 Central & 6106 Avenue.

Cable Address :  
"Endure, London."

A B C Code, 4th and 5th Editions.

**SAMPLES AND PRICES ON APPLICATION.**

[P.T.O.]

# Edwin Cooper & Co., Ltd.

*Oil and Chemical Dept.*

**86, Leadenhall Street, . .**

**. . . LONDON, E.C.**



Wheat Starch

Zinc Oxide

Zinc Sulphate

Barytes

Talcum

Albumen

Lithopone

Mineral White

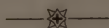
Sizes

Bleaching Powder

Vegetable Wax

Oils and Greases

Chemicals Generally.



**ENQUIRIES SOLICITED.**

JULY, 1906

# Catalogue

OF

# Special Technical Works

FOR

MANUFACTURERS, STUDENTS, AND TECHNICAL  
SCHOOLS

BY EXPERT WRITERS

## INDEX TO SUBJECTS.

	PAGE		PAGE		PAGE
Agricultural Chemistry	... 10	Dyers' Materials	... 21	Petroleum	... 6
Air, Industrial Use of	... 11	Dye-stuffs	... 22	Pigments, Chemistry of	... 2
Alum and its Sulphates	... 9	Enamelling Metal	... 18	Plumbers' Work	... 27
Ammonia	... 9	Enamels	... 18	Porcelain Painting	... 18
Aniline Colours	... 3	Engraving	... 31	Pottery Clays	... 16
Animal Fats	... 6	Essential Oils	... 7	Pottery Manufacture	... 14
Anti-corrosive Paints	... 4	Evaporating Apparatus	... 26	Power-loom Weaving	... 19
Architecture, Terms in	... 30	External Plumbing	... 27	Preserved Foods	... 30
Architectural Pottery	... 16	Fats	... 5, 6	Printers' Ready Reckoner	31
Artificial Perfumes	... 7	Faults in Woollen Goods	... 20	Printing Inks	... 3
Balsams	... 10	Gas Firing	... 26	Recipes for Oilmen, etc.	... 3
Bibliography	... 32	Glass-making Recipes	... 17	Resins	... 10
Bleaching	... 23	Glass Painting	... 17	Risks of Occupations	... 11
Bone Products	... 8	Glue Making and Testing	... 8	Rivetting China, etc.	... 16
Bookbinding	... 31	Greases	... 5	Sanitary Plumbing	... 28
Brick-making	... 15, 16	History of Staffs Potteries	... 16	Scheele's Essays	... 9
Burnishing Brass	... 28	Hops	... 28	Sealing Waxes	... 11
Carpet Yarn Printing	... 21	Hot-water Supply	... 28	Silk Dyeing	... 22
Ceramic Books	... 14, 15	How to make a Woollen Mill	...	Silk Throwing	... 19
Charcoal	... 8	Pay	... 21	Smoke Prevention	... 26
Chemical Essays	... 9	India-rubber	... 13	Soaps	... 7
Chemistry of Pottery	... 17	Inks	... 3, 11	Spinning	... 20
Chemistry of Dye-stuffs	... 23	Iron-corrosion	... 4	Staining Marble, and Bone	31
Clay Analysis	... 16	Iron, Science of	... 26	Steam Drying	... 11
Coal-dust Firing	... 26	Japanning	... 28	Sugar Refining	... 32
Colour Matching	... 21	Lacquering	... 28	Steel Hardening	... 26
Colliery Recovery Work	... 25	Lake Pigments	... 2	Sweetmeats	... 30
Colour-mixing for Dyers	... 21	Lead and its Compounds	... 11	Terra-cotta	... 16
Colour Theory	... 22	Leather Industry	... 13	Testing Paint Materials	... 4
Combining Machines	... 24	Leather-working Materials	14	Testing Yarns	... 20
Compounding Oils	... 6	Lithography	... 31	Textile Fabrics	... 20
Condensing Apparatus	... 26	Lubricants	... 5, 6	Textile Materials	... 19, 20
Cosmetics	... 8	Manures	... 8, 10	Timber	... 29
Cotton Dyeing	... 23	Mineral Pigments	... 3	Varnishes	... 4
Cotton Spinning	... 24	Mine Ventilation	... 25	Vegetable Fats	... 7
Darkening Weaving	... 20	Mine Haulage	... 25	Waste Utilisation	... 10
Dampness in Buildings	... 30	Oil and Colour Recipes	... 3	Water, Industrial Use	... 12
Decorators' Books	... 28	Oil Boiling	... 4	Waterproofing Fabrics	... 21
Decorative Textiles	... 20	Oil Merchants' Manual	... 7	Weaving Calculations	... 20
Dental Metallurgy	... 25	Oils	... 5	Wood Waste Utilisation	... 29
Dictionary of Paint Materials	2	Ozone, Industrial Use of	... 12	Wood Dyeing	... 31
Drying Oils	... 5	Paint Manufacture	... 2	Wool Dyeing	... 22, 23
Drying with Air	... 12	Paint Materials	... 3	Writing Inks	... 11
Dyeing Marble	... 31	Paint-material Testing	... 4	X-Ray Work	... 13
Dyeing Woollen Fabrics	... 23	Paper-pulp Dyeing	... 18	Yarn Testing	... 20

PUBLISHED BY

SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON,  
19 LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

Tel. Address: "PRINTERIES, LONDON".

Tel. No. 5403, Bank.

# Paints, Colours and Printing Inks.

**THE CHEMISTRY OF PIGMENTS.** By ERNEST J. PARRY, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S., and J. H. COSTE, F.I.C., F.C.S. Demy 8vo. Five Illustrations. 285 pp. Price 10s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 11s. ; Other Countries, 12s. ; strictly net.

## Contents.

**Introductory.** Light—White Light—The Spectrum—The Invisible Spectrum—Normal Spectrum—Simple Nature of Pure Spectral Colour—The Recomposition of White Light—Primary and Complementary Colours—Coloured Bodies—Absorption Spectra—**The Application of Pigments.** Uses of Pigments: Artistic, Decorative, Protective—Methods of Application of Pigments: Pastels and Crayons, Water Colour, Tempera Painting, Fresco, Encaustic Painting, Oil-colour Painting, Ceramic Art, Enamel, Stained and Painted Glass, Mosaic—**Inorganic Pigments.** White Lead—Zinc White—Enamel White—Whitening—Red Lead—Litharge—Vermilion—Royal Scarlet—The Chromium Greens—Chromates of Lead, Zinc, Silver and Mercury—Brunswick Green—The Ochres—Indian Red—Venetian Red—Siennas and Umbers—Light Red—Cappagh Brown—Red Oxides—Mars Colours—Terre Verte—Prussian Brown—Cobalt Colours—Cœruleum—Smalt—Copper Pigments—Malachite—Bremen Green—Scheele's Green—Emerald Green—Verdigris—Brunswick Green—Non-arsenical Greens—Copper Blues—Ultramarine—Carbon Pigments—Ivory Black—Lamp Black—Bistre—Naples Yellow—Arsenic Sulphides: Orpiment, Realgar—Cadmium Yellow—Vandyck Brown—**Organic Pigments.** Prussian Blue—Natural Lakes—Cochineal—Carmine—Crimson—Lac Dye—Scarlet—Madder—Alizarin—Campeachy—Quercitron—Rhamnus—Brazil Wood—Alkanet—Santal Wood—Archil—Coal-tar Lakes—Red Lakes—Alizarin Compounds—Orange and Yellow Lakes—Green and Blue Lakes—Indigo—Dragon's Blood—Gamboge—Sepia—Indian Yellow, Puree—Bitumen. Asphaltum, Mummy—**Index.**

**THE MANUFACTURE OF PAINT.** A Practical Handbook for Paint Manufacturers, Merchants and Painters. By J. CRUICKSHANK SMITH, B.Sc. Demy 8vo. 200 pp. Sixty Illustrations and One Large Diagram. Price 7s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 8s. ; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. ; strictly net.

## Contents.

Preparation of Raw Material—Storing of Raw Material—Testing and Valuation of Raw Material—Paint Plant and Machinery—The Grinding of White Lead—Grinding of White Zinc—Grinding of other White Pigments—Grinding of Oxide Paints—Grinding of Staining Colours—Grinding of Black Paints—Grinding of Chemical Colours—Yellows—Grinding of Chemical Colours—Blues—Grinding Greens—Grinding Reds—Grinding Lakes—Grinding Colours in Water—Grinding Colours in Turpentine—The Uses of Paint—Testing and Matching Paints—Economic Considerations—**Index.**

**DICTIONARY OF CHEMICALS AND RAW PRODUCTS USED IN THE MANUFACTURE OF PAINTS, COLOURS, VARNISHES AND ALLIED PREPARATIONS.** By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. Demy 8vo. 380 pp. Price 7s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 8s. ; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. ; strictly net.

**THE MANUFACTURE OF LAKE PIGMENTS FROM ARTIFICIAL COLOURS.** By FRANCIS H. JENNISON, F.I.C., F.C.S. Sixteen Coloured Plates, showing Specimens of Eighty-nine Colours, specially prepared from the Recipes given in the Book. 136 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 8s. ; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. ; strictly net.

## Contents.

The Groups of the Artificial Colouring Matters—The Nature and Manipulation of Artificial Colours—Lake-forming Bodies for Acid Colours—Lake-forming Bodies' Basic Colours—Lake Bases—The Principles of Lake Formation—Red Lakes—Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Violet and Black Lakes—The Production of Insoluble Azo Colours in the Form of Pigments—The General Properties of Lakes Produced from Artificial Colours—Washing, Filtering and Finishing—Matching and Testing Lake Pigments—**Index.**



## THE MANUFACTURE OF MINERAL AND LAKE

**PIGMENTS.** Containing Directions for the Manufacture of all Artificial, Artists and Painters' Colours, Enamel, Soot and Metallic Pigments. A Text-book for Manufacturers, Merchants, Artists and Painters. By Dr. JOSEF BERSCH. Translated by A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). Forty-three Illustrations. 476 pp., demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Introduction—Physico-chemical Behaviour of Pigments—Raw Materials Employed in the Manufacture of Pigments—Assistant Materials—Metallic Compounds—The Manufacture of Mineral Pigments—The Manufacture of White Lead—Enamel White—Washing Apparatus—Zinc White—Yellow Mineral Pigments—Chrome Yellow—Lead Oxide Pigments—Other Yellow Pigments—Mosaic Gold—Red Mineral Pigments—The Manufacture of Vermilion—Antimony Vermilion—Ferric Oxide Pigments—Other Red Mineral Pigments—Purple of Cassius—Blue Mineral Pigments—Ultramarine—Manufacture of Ultramarine—Blue Copper Pigments—Blue Cobalt Pigments—Smalts—Green Mineral Pigments—Emerald Green—Verdigris—Chromium Oxide—Other Green Chromium Pigments—Green Cobalt Pigments—Green Manganese Pigments—Compounded Green Pigments—Violet Mineral Pigments—Brown Mineral Pigments—Brown Decomposition Products—Black Pigments—Manufacture of Soot Pigments—Manufacture of Lamp Black—The Manufacture of Soot Black without Chambers—Indian Ink—Enamel Colours—Metallic Pigments—Bronze Pigments—Vegetable Bronze Pigments.

PIGMENTS OF ORGANIC ORIGIN—Lakes—Yellow Lakes—Red Lakes—Manufacture of Carmine—The Colouring Matter of Lac—Safflower or Carthamine Red—Madder and its Colouring Matters—Madder Lakes—Manjit (Indian Madder)—Lichen Colouring Matters—Red Wood Lakes—The Colouring Matters of Sandal Wood and Other Dye Woods—Blue Lakes—Indigo Carmine—The Colouring Matter of Log Wood—Green Lakes—Brown Organic Pigments—Sap Colours—Water Colours—Crayons—Confectionery Colours—The Preparation of Pigments for Painting—The Examination of Pigments—Examination of Lakes—The Testing of Dye-Woods—The Design of a Colour Works—Commercial Names of Pigments—Appendix: Conversion of Metric to English Weights and Measures—Centigrade and Fahrenheit Thermometer Scales—Index.

## RECIPES FOR THE COLOUR, PAINT, VARNISH, OIL, SOAP AND DRY-SALTERY TRADES.

Compiled by AN ANALYTICAL CHEMIST. 350 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and British Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Pigments or Colours for Paints, Lithographic and Letterpress Printing Inks, etc.—Mixed Paints and Preparations for Paint-making, Painting, Lime-washing, Paperhanging, etc.—Varnishes for Coach-builders, Cabinetmakers, Wood-workers, Metal-workers, Photographers, etc.—Soaps for Toilet, Cleansing, Polishing, etc.—Perfumes—Lubricating Greases, Oils, etc.—Cements, Pastes, Glues and Other Adhesive Preparations—Writing, Marking, Endorsing and Other Inks—Sealing-wax and Office Requisites—Preparations for the Laundry, Kitchen, Stable and General Household Uses—Disinfectant Preparations—Miscellaneous Preparations—Index

## OIL COLOURS AND PRINTING INKS.

By LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Translated from the German. 215 pp. Crown 8vo. 56 Illustrations. Price 5s.; India and British Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Linseed Oil—Poppy Oil—Mechanical Purification of Linseed Oil—Chemical Purification of Linseed Oil—Bleaching Linseed Oil—Oxidizing Agents for Boiling Linseed Oil—Theory of Oil Boiling—Manufacture of Boiled Oil—Adulterations of Boiled Oil—Chinese Drying Oil and Other Specialities—Pigments for House and Artistic Painting and Inks—Pigment for Printers' Black Inks—Substitutes for Lampblack—Machinery for Colour Grinding and Rubbing—Machines for mixing Pigments with the Vehicle—Paint Mills—Manufacture of House Oil Paints—Ship Paints—Luminous Paint—Artists' Colours—Printers' Inks—VEHICLES—Printers' Inks—PIGMENTS and MANUFACTURE—Index.

(See also *Writing Inks*, p. II.)

**CASEIN.** By ROBERT SCHERER. Translated from the German by CHAS. SALTER. With 11 Illustrations. 160 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; net.

**Contents.**

Casein, its Composition and Properties—Preparation and Purification—Casein Water-Paints—Casein Putties and Adhesives—Casein Plasters and Pastes—Casein in the Textile Industry—Casein Foodstuffs—Various Uses of Casein as Paper, Pulp, etc.

**SIMPLE METHODS FOR TESTING PAINTERS' MATERIALS.** By A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). Crown 8vo. 160 pp. Price 5s.; India and British Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Necessity for Testing—Standards—Arrangement—The Apparatus—The Reagents—Practical Tests—Dry Colours—Stiff Paints—Liquid and Enamel Paints—Oil Varnishes—Spirit Varnishes—Driers—Putty—Linseed Oil—Turpentine—Water Stains—The Chemical Examination—Dry Colours and Paints—White Pigments and Paints—Yellow Pigments and Paints—Blue Pigments and Paints—Green Pigments and Paints—Red Pigments and Paints—Brown Pigments and Paints—Black Pigments and Paints—Oil Varnishes—Linseed Oil—Turpentine.

**IRON - CORROSION, ANTI - FOULING AND ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.** Translated from the German of LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Sixty-two Illustrations. 275 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Iron-rust and its Formation—Protection from Rusting by Paint—Grounding the Iron with Linseed Oil, etc.—Testing Paints—Use of Tar for Painting on Iron—Anti-corrosive Paints—Linseed Varnish—Chinese Wood Oil—Lead Pigments—Iron Pigments—Artificial Iron Oxides—Carbon—Preparation of Anti-corrosive Paints—Results of Examination of Several Anti-corrosive Paints—Paints for Ship's Bottoms—Anti-fouling Compositions—Various Anti-corrosive and Ship's Paints—Official Standard Specifications for Ironwork Paints—Index.

**THE TESTING AND VALUATION OF RAW MATERIALS USED IN PAINT AND COLOUR MANUFACTURE.** By M. W. JONES, F.C.S. A Book for the Laboratories of Colour Works. 88 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Aluminium Compounds—China Clay—Iron Compounds—Potassium Compounds—Sodium Compounds—Ammonium Hydrate—Acids—Chromium Compounds—Tin Compounds—Copper Compounds—Lead Compounds—Zinc Compounds—Manganese Compounds—Arsenic Compounds—Antimony Compounds—Calcium Compounds—Barium Compounds—Cadmium Compounds—Mercury Compounds—Ultramarine—Cobalt and Carbon Compounds—Oils—Index.

**STUDENTS' MANUAL OF PAINTS, COLOURS, OILS AND VARNISHES.** By JOHN FURNELL. Crown 8vo. 12 Illustrations. 96 pp. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Plant—Chromes—Blues—Greens—Earth Colours—Blacks—Reds—Lakes—Whites—Painters' Oils—Turpentine—Oil Varnishes—Spirit Varnishes—Liquid Paints—Enamel Paints

# Varnishes and Drying Oils.

**OIL CRUSHING, REFINING AND BOILING, THE MANUFACTURE OF LIOLEUM, PRINTING AND LITHOGRAPHIC INKS, AND INDIA-RUBBER SUBSTITUTES.** By JOHN GEDDES MCINTOSH. Being Volume I. of the Second, greatly enlarged, English Edition, in three Volumes, of "The Manufacture of Varnishes and Kindred Industries," based on and including the work of Ach. Livache. Demy 8vo. 150 pp. 29 Illustrations. 1905. Price 7s. 6d.; Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net. Post free.

## Contents.

Oil Crushing and Refining; Oil Boiling—Theoretical and Practical; Linoleum Manufacture; Printing Ink Manufacture; Rubber Substitutes; The Manufacture of Driers; The Detection of Adulteration in Linseed and other Drying Oils by Chemical, Physical and Organoleptic Methods.

**DRYING OILS, BOILED OIL AND SOLID AND LIQUID DRIERS.** By L. E. ANDÉS. Expressly Written for this Series of Special Technical Books, and the Publishers hold the Copyright for English and Foreign Editions. Forty-two Illustrations. 342 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Properties of the Drying Oils; Cause of the Drying Property; Absorption of Oxygen; Behaviour towards Metallic Oxides, etc.—The Properties of and Methods for obtaining the Drying Oils—Production of the Drying Oils by Expression and Extraction; Refining and Bleaching; Oil Cakes and Meal; The Refining and Bleaching of the Drying Oils; The Bleaching of Linseed Oil—The Manufacture of Boiled Oil; The Preparation of Drying Oils for Use in the Grinding of Paints and Artists' Colours and in the Manufacture of Varnishes by Heating over a Fire or by Steam, by the Cold Process, by the Action of Air, and by Means of the Electric Current; The Driers used in Boiling Linseed Oil; The Manufacture of Boiled Oil and the Apparatus therefor—Livache's Process for Preparing a Good Drying Oil and its Practical Application—The Preparation of Varnishes for Letterpress, Lithographic and Copperplate Printing, for Oilcloth and Waterproof Fabrics; The Manufacture of Thickened Linseed Oil, Burnt Oil, Stand Oil by Fire Heat, Superheated Steam, and by a Current of Air—Behaviour of the Drying Oils and Boiled Oils towards Atmospheric Influences, Water, Acids and Alkalies—Boiled Oil Substitutes—The Manufacture of Solid and Liquid Driers from Linseed Oil and Rosin; Linolic Acid Compounds of the Driers—The Adulteration and Examination of the Drying Oils and Boiled Oil.

# Oils, Fats, Soaps and Perfumes.

**LUBRICATING OILS, FATS AND GREASES:** Their Origin, Preparation, Properties, Uses and Analyses. A Handbook for Oil Manufacturers, Refiners and Merchants, and the Oil and Fat Industry in General. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. Second Revised and Enlarged Edition. Sixty-five Illustrations. 317 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Introductory—Hydrocarbon Oils—Scotch Shale Oils—Petroleum—Vegetable and Animal Oils—Testing and Adulteration of Oils—Lubricating Greases—Lubrication—Appendices—Index.



**TECHNOLOGY OF PETROLEUM:** Oil Fields of the World—Their History, Geography and Geology—Annual Production and Development—Oil-well Drilling—Transport. By HENRY NEUBERGER and HENRY NOALHAT. Translated from the French by J. G. MCINTOSH. 550 pp. 153 Illustrations. 26 Plates. Super Royal 8vo. Price 21s.; India and Colonies, 22s.; Other Countries, 23s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

**Study of the Petroliferous Strata**—Petroleum—Definition—The Genesis or Origin of Petroleum—The Oil Fields of Galicia, their History—Physical Geography and Geology of the Galician Oil Fields—Practical Notes on Galician Land Law—Economic Hints on Working, etc.—Roumania—History, Geography, Geology—Petroleum in Russia—History—Russian Petroleum (*continued*)—Geography and Geology of the Caucasian Oil Fields—Russian Petroleum (*continued*)—The Secondary Oil Fields of Europe, Northern Germany, Alsace, Italy, etc.—Petroleum in France—Petroleum in Asia—Transcaspian and Turkestan Territory—Turkestan—Persia—British India and Burmah—British Burmah or Lower Burmah—China—Chinese Thibet—Japan, Formosa and Saghalien—Petroleum in Oceania—Sumatra, Java, Borneo—Isle of Timor—Philippine Isles—New Zealand—The United States of America—History—Physical Geology and Geography of the United States Oil Fields—Canadian and other North American Oil Fields—Economic Data of Work in North America—Petroleum in the West Indies and South America—Petroleum in the French Colonies.

**Excavations**—Hand Excavation or Hand Digging of Oil Wells.

**Methods of Boring.**

**Accidents**—Boring Accidents—Methods of preventing them—Methods of remedying them—Explosives and the use of the "Torpedo" Levigation—Storing and Transport of Petroleum—General Advice—Prospecting, Management and carrying on of Petroleum Boring Operations.

**General Data—Customary Formulæ—Memento.** Practical Part. General Data bearing on Petroleum—Glossary of Technical Terms used in the Petroleum Industry—Copious Index.

## THE PRACTICAL COMPOUNDING OF OILS, TALLOW AND GREASE FOR LUBRICATION, ETC.

By AN EXPERT OIL REFINER. 100 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

**Introductory Remarks** on the General Nomenclature of Oils, Tallow and Greases suitable for Lubrication—**Hydrocarbon Oils—Animal and Fish Oils—Compound Oils—Vegetable Oils—Lamp Oils—Engine Tallow, Solidified Oils and Petroleum Jelly—Machinery Greases: Loco and Anti-friction—Clarifying and Utilisation of Waste Fats, Oils, Tank Bottoms, Drainings of Barrels and Drums, Pickings Up, Dregs, etc.**—The Fixing and Cleaning of Oil Tanks, etc.—Appendix and General Information.

## ANIMAL FATS AND OILS: Their Practical Production,

Purification and Uses for a great Variety of Purposes. Their Properties, Falsification and Examination. Translated from the German of LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Sixty-two Illustrations. 240 pp. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

**Introduction**—Occurrence, Origin, Properties and Chemical Constitution of Animal Fats—Preparation of Animal Fats and Oils—Machinery—Tallow-melting Plant—Extraction Plant—Presses—Filtering Apparatus—Butter: Raw Material and Preparation, Properties, Adulterations, Beef Lard or Remelted Butter. Testing—Candle-fish Oil—Mutton-Tallow—Hare Fat—Goose Fat—Neatsfoot Oil—Bone Fat: Bone Boiling, Steaming Bones, Extraction, Refining—Bone Oil—Artificial Butter: Oleomargarine, Margarine Manufacture in France, Grasso's Process, "Kaiser's Butter," Jahr & Münzberg's Method, Filbert's Process, Winter's Method—Human Fat—Horse Fat—Beef Marrow—Turtle Oil—Hog's Lard: Raw Material—Preparation, Properties, Adulterations, Examination—Lard Oil—Fish Oils—Liver Oils—Artificial Train Oil—Wool Fat: Properties, Purified Wool Fat—Spermaceti: Examination of Fats and Oils in General.

## THE MANUFACTURE OF GREASES, BLACKINGS AND LUBRICANTS.

By RICHARD BRUNNER. Translated from the Sixth German Edition by CHAS. SALTER. 10 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; net, post free.



## THE OIL MERCHANTS' MANUAL AND OIL TRADE

**READY RECKONER.** Compiled by FRANK F. SHERRIFF.

Second Edition Revised and Enlarged. Demy 8vo. 214 pp. 1904.

With Two Sheets of Tables. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.;

Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Trade Terms and Customs—Tables to Ascertain Value of Oil sold per cwt. or ton—Specific Gravity Tables—Percentage Tare Tables—Petroleum Tables—Paraffine and Benzoline Calculations—Customary Drafts—Tables for Calculating Allowance for Dirt, Water, etc.—Capacity of Circular Tanks Tables, etc., etc.

## THE CHEMISTRY OF ESSENTIAL OILS AND ARTIFICIAL PERFUMES.

By ERNEST J. PARRY, B.Sc.

(Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S. 411 pp. 20 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. Price

12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.;

strictly net.

### Contents.

The General Properties of Essential Oils—Compounds occurring in Essential Oils—The Preparation of Essential Oils—The Analysis of Essential Oils—Systematic Study of the Essential Oils—Terpeneless Oils—The Chemistry of Artificial Perfumes—Appendix: Table of Constants—Index.

## VEGETABLE FATS AND OILS: Their Practical Prepara-

tion, Purification and Employment for Various Purposes, their Properties, Adulteration and Examination. Translated from the German of

LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Ninety-four Illustrations. 340 pp. Second

Edition. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other

Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

General Properties—Estimation of the Amount of Oil in Seeds—The Preparation of Vegetable Fats and Oils—Apparatus for Grinding Oil Seeds and Fruits—Installation of Oil and Fat Works—Extraction Method of Obtaining Oils and Fats—Oil Extraction Installations—Press Moulds—Non-drying Vegetable Oils—Vegetable drying Oils—Solid Vegetable Fats—Fruits Yielding Oils and Fats—Wool-softening Oils—Soluble Oils—Treatment of the Oil after Leaving the Press—Improved Methods of Refining—Bleaching Fats and Oils—Practical Experiments on the Treatment of Oils with regard to Refining and Bleaching—Testing Oils and Fats.

## SOAPS. A Practical Manual of the Manufacture of Domestic,

Toilet and other Soaps. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. 390 pp.

66 Illustrations. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other

Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Introductory—Soap-maker's Alkalies—Soap Fats and Oils—Perfumes—Water as a Soap Material—Soap Machinery—Technology of Soap-making—Glycerine in Soap Lyes—Laying out a Soap Factory—Soap Analysis—Appendices.

# Textile Soaps.

## TEXTILE SOAPS AND OILS. Handbook on the Prepara-

tion, Properties and Analysis of the Soaps and Oils used in Textile

Manufacturing, Dyeing and Printing. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S.

Crown 8vo. 195 pp. 1904. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.;

Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Methods of Making Soaps—Hard Soap—Soft Soap. Special Textile Soaps—Wool Soaps—Calico Printers' Soaps—Dyers' Soaps. Relation of Soap to Water for Industrial Purposes—Treating Waste Soap Liquors—Boiled Off Liquor—Calico Printers and Dyers' Soap Liquors—Soap Analysis—Fat in Soap.

ANIMAL AND VEGETABLE OILS AND FATS—Tallow—Lard—Bone Grease—Tallow Oil. Vegetable Soap, Oils and Fats—Palm Oil—Coco-nut Oil—Olive Oil—Cottonseed Oil—Linseed Oil—Castor Oil—Corn Oil—Whale Oil or Train Oil—Repe Oil.

### GLYCERINE.

TEXTILE OILS—Oleic Acid—Blended Wool Oils—Oils for Cotton Dyeing, Printing and Finishing—Turkey Red Oil—Alizarine Oil—Oleine—Oxy Turkey Red Oils—Soluble Oil—Analysis of Turkey Red Oil—Finisher's Soluble Oil—Finisher's Soap Softening—Testing and Adulteration of Oils—Index.

# Cosmetical Preparations.

**COSMETICS: MANUFACTURE, EMPLOYMENT AND TESTING OF ALL COSMETIC MATERIALS AND COSMETIC SPECIALITIES.** Translated from the German of Dr. THEODOR KOLLER. Crown 8vo. 262 pp. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s. net.

## Contents.

Purposes and Uses of, and Ingredients used in the Preparation of Cosmetics—Preparation of Perfumes by Pressure, Distillation, Maceration, Absorption or Enfleurage, and Extraction Methods—Chemical and Animal Products used in the Preparation of Cosmetics—Oils and Fats used in the Preparation of Cosmetics—General Cosmetic Preparations—Mouth Washes and Tooth Pastes—Hair Dyes, Hair Restorers and Depilatories—Cosmetic Adjuncts and Specialities—Colouring Cosmetic Preparations—Antiseptic Washes and Soaps—Toilet and Hygienic Soaps—Secret Preparations for Skin, Complexion, Teeth, Mouth, etc.—Testing and Examining the Materials Employed in the Manufacture of Cosmetics—Index.

# Glue, Bone Products and Manures.

**GLUE AND GLUE TESTING.** By SAMUEL RIDEAL, D.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C. Fourteen Engravings. 144 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**Constitution and Properties:** Definitions and Sources, Gelatine, Chondrin and Allied Bodies, Physical and Chemical Properties, Classification, Grades and Commercial Varieties—**Raw Materials and Manufacture:** Glue Stock, Lining, Extraction, Washing and Clarifying, Filter Presses, Water Supply, Use of Alkalies, Action of Bacteria and of Antiseptics, Various Processes, Cleansing, Forming, Drying, Crushing, etc., Secondary Products—**Uses of Glue:** Selection and Preparation for Use, Carpentry, Veneering, Paper-Making, Book-binding, Printing Rollers, Hectographs, Match Manufacture, Sandpaper, etc., Substitutes for other Materials, Artificial Leather and Caoutchouc—**Gelatine:** General Characters, Liquid Gelatine, Photographic Uses, Size, Tanno-, Chrome and Formo-Gelatine, Artificial Silk, Cements, Pneumatic Tyres, Culinary, Meat Extracts, Isinglass, Medicinal and other Uses, Bacteriology—**Glue Testing:** Review of Processes, Chemical Examination, Adulteration, Physical Tests, Valuation of Raw Materials—**Commercial Aspects.**

**BONE PRODUCTS AND MANURES:** An Account of the most recent Improvements in the Manufacture of Fat, Glue, Animal Charcoal, Size, Gelatine and Manures. By THOMAS LAMBERT, Technical and Consulting Chemist. Illustrated by Twenty-one Plans and Diagrams. 162 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Chemical Composition of Bones—Arrangement of Factory—Properties of Glue—Glutin and Chondrin—Skin Glue—Liming of Skins—Washing—Boiling of Skins—Clarification of Glue Liquors—Glue-Boiling and Clarifying-House—Specification of a Glue—Size—Uses and Preparation and Composition of Size—Concentrated Size—Properties of Gelatine—Preparation of Skin Gelatine—Drying—Bone Gelatine—Selecting Bones—Crushing—Dissolving—Bleaching—Boiling—Properties of Glutin and Chondrin—Testing of Glues and Gelatines—The Uses of Glue, Gelatine and Size in Various Trades—Soluble and Liquid Glues—Steam and Waterproof Glues—**Manures**—Importation of Food Stuffs—Soils—Germination—Plant Life—**Natural Manures**—Water and Nitrogen in Farmyard Manure—Full Analysis of Farmyard Manure—Action on Crops—Water-Closet System—Sewage Manure—Green Manures—**Artificial Manures**—**Mineral Manures**—Nitrogenous Matters—Shoddy—Hoofs and Horns—Leather Waste—Dried Meat—Dried Blood—Superphosphates—Composition—Manufacture—Common Raw Bones—Degreased Bones—Crude Fat—Refined Fat—Degelatinised Bones—Animal Charcoal—Bone Superphosphates—Guanos—Dried Animal Products—Potash Compounds—Sulphate of Ammonia—**Extraction in Vacuo**—French and British Gelatines compared—Index.

# Chemicals, Waste Products and Agricultural Chemistry.

**REISSUE OF CHEMICAL ESSAYS OF C. W. SCHEELÉ.** First Published in English in 1786. Translated from the Academy of Sciences at Stockholm, with Additions. 300 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Memoir: C. W. Scheele and his work (written for this edition by J. G. McIntosh)—On Fluor Mineral and its Acid—On Fluor Mineral—Chemical Investigation of Fluor Acid, with a View to the Earth which it Yields, by Mr. Wiegler—Additional Information Concerning Fluor Minerals—On Manganese, Magnesium, or Magnesia Vitriariorum—On Arsenic and its Acid—Remarks upon Salts of Benzoin—On Silic, Clay and Alum—Analysis of the Calculus Vesical—Method of Preparing Mercurius Dulcis Via Humida—Cheaper and more Convenient Method of Preparing Pulvis Algarothi—Experiments upon Molybdæna—Experiments on Plumbago—Method of Preparing a New Green Colour—Of the Decomposition of Neutral Salts by Unslaked Lime and Iron—On the Quantity of Pure Air which is Daily Present in our Atmosphere—On Milk and its Acid—On the Acid of Saccharum Lactis—On the Constituent Parts of Lapis Ponderosus or Tungsten—Experiments and Observations on Ether—Index.

**THE MANUFACTURE OF ALUM AND THE SULPHATES AND OTHER SALTS OF ALUMINA AND IRON.** Their Uses and Applications as Mordants in Dyeing and Calico Printing, and their other Applications in the Arts, Manufactures, Sanitary Engineering, Agriculture and Horticulture. Translated from the French of LUCIEN GESCHWIND. 195 Illustrations. 400 pp. Royal 8vo. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**Theoretical Study of Aluminium, Iron, and Compounds of these Metals—**Aluminium and its Compounds—Iron and Iron Compounds.

**Manufacture of Aluminium Sulphates and Sulphates of Iron—**Manufacture of Aluminium Sulphate and the Alums—Manufacture of Sulphates of Iron.

**Uses of the Sulphates of Aluminium and Iron—**Uses of Aluminium Sulphate and Alums—Application to Wool and Silk—Preparing and using Aluminium Acetates—Employment of Aluminium Sulphate in Carbonising Wool—The Manufacture of Lake Pigments—Manufacture of Prussian Blue—Hide and Leather Industry—Paper Making—Hardening Plaster—Lime Washes—Preparation of Non-inflammable Wood, etc.—Purification of Waste Waters—**Uses and Applications of Ferrous Sulphate and Ferric Sulphates—**Dyeing—Manufacture of Pigments—Writing Inks—Purification of Lighting Gas—Agriculture—Cotton Dyeing—Disinfectant—Purifying Waste Liquors—Manufacture of Nordhausen Sulphuric Acid—Fertilising.

**Chemical Characteristics of Iron and Aluminium—Analysis of Various Aluminous or Ferruginous Products—**Aluminium—Analysing Aluminium Products—Alunite Alumina—Sodium Aluminate—Aluminium Sulphate—**Iron—**Analytical Characteristics of Iron Salts—Analysis of Pyritic Lignite—Ferrous and Ferric Sulphates—Rouil Mordant—Index.

**AMMONIA AND ITS COMPOUNDS:** Their Manufacture and Uses. By CAMILLE VINCENT, Professor at the Central School of Arts and Manufactures, Paris. Translated from the French by M. J. SALTER. Royal 8vo. 114 pp. Thirty-two Illustrations. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**General Considerations:** Various Sources of Ammoniacal Products; Human Urine as a Source of Ammonia—**Extraction of Ammoniacal Products from Sewage—**Extraction of Ammonia from Gas Liquor—**Manufacture of Ammoniacal Compounds from Bones, Nitrogenous Waste, Beetroot Wash and Peat—**Manufacture of Caustic Ammonia, and Ammonium Chloride, Phosphate and Carbonate—**Recovery of Ammonia from the Ammonia-Soda Mother Liquors—**Index.



## ANALYSIS OF RESINS AND BALSAMS. Translated

from the German of Dr. KARL DIETERICH. Demy 8vo. 340 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Definition of Resins in General—Definition of Balsams, and especially the Gum Resins—External and Superficial Characteristics of Resinous Bodies—Distinction between Resinous Bodies and Fats and Oils—Origin, Occurrence and Collection of Resinous Substances—Classification—Chemical Constituents of Resinous Substances—Resinols—Resinot Annols—Behaviour of Resin Constituents towards the Cholesterine Reactions—Uses and Identification of Resins—Melting-point—Solvents—Acid Value—Saponification Value—Resin Value—Ester and Ether Values—Acetyl and Corbonyl Value—Methyl Value—Resin Acid—Systematic Résumé of the Performance of the Acid and Saponification Value Tests.

**Balsams**—Introduction—Definitions—Canada Balsam—Copaiba Balsam—Angostura Copaiba Balsam—Babia Copaiba Balsam—Carthagea Copaiba Balsam—Maracaibo Copaiba Balsam—Maturin Copaiba Balsam—Gurjum Copaiba Balsam—Para Copaiba Balsam—Surinam Copaiba Balsam—West African Copaiba Balsam—Mecca Balsam—Peruvian Balsam—Tolu Balsam—Acaroid Resin—Amine—Amber—African and West Indian Kino—Bengal Kino—Labdanum—Mastic—Pine Resin—Sandarach—Scammonium—Shellac—Storax—Adulteration of Styrae Liquidus Crudus—Purified Storax—Styrax Crudus Colatus—Tacamahac—Thapsia Resin—Turpentine—Chios Turpentine—Strassburg Turpentine—Turpeth Turpentine. **Gum Resins**—Ammoniacum—Bdellium—Euphorbium—Galbanum—Camboge—Lactucarium—Myrrh—Opopanax—Sagapenum—Olibanum or Incense—Acaroid Resin—Amber—Thapsia Resin—Index.

## MANUAL OF AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY. By

HERBERT INGLE, F.I.C., Lecturer on Agricultural Chemistry, the Yorkshire College; Lecturer in the Victoria University. 388 pp. 11 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. net.

### Contents.

Introduction—The Atmosphere—The Soil—The Reactions occurring in Soils—The Analysis of Soils—Manures, Natural—Manures (continued)—The Analysis of Manures—The Constituents of Plants—The Plant—Crops—The Animal—Foods and Feeding—Milk and Milk Products—The Analysis of Milk and Milk Products—Miscellaneous Products used in Agriculture—Appendix—Index.

## THE UTILISATION OF WASTE PRODUCTS. A Treatise

on the Rational Utilisation, Recovery and Treatment of Waste Products of all kinds. By Dr. THEODOR KOLLER. Translated from the Second Revised German Edition. Twenty-two Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 280 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

The Waste of Towns—**Ammonia and Sal-Ammoniac**—Rational Processes for Obtaining these Substances by Treating Residues and Waste—Residues in the Manufacture of Aniline Dyes—Amber Waste—Brewers' Waste—Blood and Slaughter-House Refuse—Manufactured Fuels—Waste Paper and Bookbinders' Waste—Iron Slags—Excrement—Colouring Matters from Waste—Dyers' Waste Waters—Fat from Waste—Fish Waste—Calamine Sludge—Tannery Waste—Gold and Silver Waste—India-rubber and Caoutchouc Waste—Residues in the Manufacture of Rosin Oil—Wood Waste—Horn Waste—Infusorial Earth—Iridium from Goldsmiths' Sweepings—Jute Waste—Cork Waste—Leather Waste—Glue Makers' Waste—Illuminating Gas from Waste and the By-Products of the Manufacture of Coal Gas—Meerschum—Molasses—Metal Waste—By-Products in the Manufacture of Mineral Waters—Fruit—The By-Products of Paper and Paper Pulp Works—By-Products in the Treatment of Coal Tar Oils—Fur Waste—The Waste Matter in the Manufacture of Parchment Paper—Mother of Pearl Waste—Petroleum Residues—Platinum Residues—Broken Porcelain. Earthenware and Glass—Salt Waste—Slate Waste—Sulphur—Burnt Pyrites—Silk Waste—Soap Makers' Waste—Alkali Waste and the Recovery of Soda—Waste Produced in Grinding Mirrors—Waste Products in the Manufacture of Starch—Stearic Acid—Vegetable Ivory Waste—Turf—Waste Waters of Cloth Factories—Wine Residues—Tinplate Waste—Wool Waste—Wool Sweat—The Waste Liquids from Sugar Works—Index.



# Writing Inks and Sealing Waxes.

**INK MANUFACTURE :** Including Writing, Copying, Lithographic, Marking, Stamping, and Laundry Inks. By SIGMUND LEHNER. Three Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 162 pp. Translated from the German of the Fifth Edition. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; net.

## Contents.

Varieties of Ink—Writing Inks—Raw Materials of Tannin Inks—The Chemical Constitution of the Tannin Inks—Recipes for Tannin Inks—Logwood Tannin Inks—Ferric Inks—Alizarine Inks—Extract Inks—Logwood Inks—Copying Inks—Hektographs—Hektograph Inks—Safety Inks—Ink Extracts and Powders—Preserving Inks—Changes in Ink and the Restoration of Faded Writing—Coloured Inks—Red Inks—Blue Inks—Violet Inks—Yellow Inks—Green Inks—Metallic Inks—Indian Ink—Lithographic Inks and Pencils—Ink Pencils—Marking Inks—Ink Specialities—Sympathetic Inks—Stamping Inks—Laundry or Washing Blue—Index.

**SEALING-WAXES, WAFERS AND OTHER ADHESIVES FOR THE HOUSEHOLD, OFFICE, WORKSHOP AND FACTORY.** By H. C. STANDAGE. Crown 8vo. 96 pp. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Materials Used for Making Sealing-Waxes—The Manufacture of Sealing-Waxes—Wafers—Notes on the Nature of the Materials Used in Making Adhesive Compounds—Cements for Use in the Household—Office Gums, Pastes and Mucilages—Adhesive Compounds for Factory and Workshop Use.

# Lead Ores and Compounds.

**LEAD AND ITS COMPOUNDS.** By THOS. LAMBERT, Technical and Consulting Chemist. Demy 8vo. 226 pp. Forty Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; net. Plans and Diagrams.

## Contents.

History—Ores of Lead—Geographical Distribution of the Lead Industry—Chemical and Physical Properties of Lead—Alloys of Lead—Compounds of Lead—Dressing of Lead Ores—Smelting of Lead Ores—Smelting in the Scotch or American Ore-hearth—Smelting in the Shaft or Blast Furnace—Condensation of Lead Fume—Desilverisation, or the Separation of Silver from Argentiferous Lead—Cupellation—The Manufacture of Lead Pipes and Sheets—Protoxide of Lead—Litharge and Massicot—Red Lead or Minium—Lead Poisoning—Lead Substitutes—Zinc and its Compounds—Pumice Stone—Drying Oils and Siccatives—Oil of Turpentine Resin—Classification of Mineral Pigments—Analysis of Raw and Finished Products—Tables—Index.

**NOTES ON LEAD ORES :** Their Distribution and Properties. By JAS. FAIRIE, F.G.S. Crown 8vo. 64 pages. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad 3s.; strictly net.

# Industrial Hygiene.

**THE RISKS AND DANGERS TO HEALTH OF VARIOUS OCCUPATIONS AND THEIR PREVENTION.** By LEONARD A. PARRY, M.D., B.Sc. (Lond.). 196 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Occupations which are Accompanied by the Generation and Scattering of Abnormal Quantities of Dust—Trades in which there is Danger of Metallic Poisoning—Certain Chemical Trades—Some Miscellaneous Occupations—Trades in which Various Poisonous Vapours are Inhaled—General Hygienic Considerations—Index.

# Industrial Uses of Air, Steam and Water.

**DRYING BY MEANS OF AIR AND STEAM.** Explanations, Formulæ, and Tables for Use in Practice. Translated from the German of E. HAUSBRAND. Two folding Diagrams and Thirteen Tables. Crown 8vo. 72 pp. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

British and Metric Systems Compared—Centigrade and Fahr. Thermometers—Estimation of the Maximum Weight of Saturated Aqueous Vapour which can be contained in 1 kilo. of Air at Different Pressure and Temperatures—Calculation of the Necessary Weight and Volume of Air, and of the Least Expenditure of Heat, per Drying Apparatus with Heated Air, at the Atmospheric Pressure: *A*, With the Assumption that the Air is *Completely Saturated* with Vapour both before Entry and after Exit from the Apparatus—*B*, When the Atmospheric Air is *Completely Saturated before entry*, but at its *exit* is only  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{3}$  Saturated—*C*, When the Atmospheric Air is *not* Saturated with Moisture before Entering the Drying Apparatus—Drying Apparatus, in which, in the Drying Chamber, a Pressure is Artificially Created, Higher or Lower than that of the Atmosphere—Drying by Means of Superheated Steam, without Air—Heating Surface, Velocity of the Air Current, Dimensions of the Drying Room, Surface of the Drying Material, Losses of Heat—Index.

(See also "*Evaporating, Condensing and Cooling Apparatus*," p. 27.)

**PURE AIR, OZONE AND WATER.** A Practical Treatise of their Utilisation and Value in Oil, Grease, Soap, Paint, Glue and other Industries. By W. B. COWELL. Twelve Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 85 pp. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Atmospheric Air; Lifting of Liquids; Suction Process; Preparing Blown Oils; Preparing Siccative Drying Oils—Compressed Air; Whitewash—Liquid Air; Retrocession—Purification of Water; Water Hardness—Fleshings and Bones—Ozonised Air in the Bleaching and Deodorising of Fats, Glues, etc.; Bleaching Textile Fibres—Appendix: Air and Gases; Pressure of Air at Various Temperatures; Fuel; Table of Combustibles; Saving of Fuel by Heating Feed Water; Table of Solubilities of Scale Making Minerals; British Thermal Units Tables; Volume of the Flow of Steam into the Atmosphere; Temperature of Steam—Index.

**THE INDUSTRIAL USES OF WATER. COMPOSITION—EFFECTS—TROUBLES—REMEDIES—RESIDUARY WATERS—PURIFICATION—ANALYSIS.** By H. DE LA COUX. Royal 8vo. Translated from the French and Revised by ARTHUR MORRIS. 364 pp. 135 Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d.; Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Chemical Action of Water in Nature and in Industrial Use—Composition of Waters—Solubility of Certain Salts in Water Considered from the Industrial Point of View—Effects on the Boiling of Water—Effects of Water in the Industries—Difficulties with Water—Feed Water for Boilers—Water in Dyeworks, Print Works, and Bleach Works—Water in the Textile Industries and in Conditioning—Water in Soap Works—Water in Laundries and Washhouses—Water in Tanning—Water in Preparing Tannin and Dyewood Extracts—Water in Papermaking—Water in Photography—Water in Sugar Refining—Water in Making Ices and Beverages—Water in Cider Making—Water in Brewing—Water in Distilling—Preliminary Treatment and Apparatus—Substances Used for Preliminary Chemical Purification—Commercial Specialities and their Employment—Precipitation of Matters in Suspension in Water—Apparatus for the Preliminary Chemical Purification of Water—Industrial Filters—Industrial Sterilisation of Water—Residuary Waters and their Purification—Soil Filtration—Purification by Chemical Processes—Analyses—Index.

(See *Books on Smoke Prevention, Engineering and Metallurgy*, p. 26, etc.)

## X Rays.

**PRACTICAL X RAY WORK.** By FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., Member of the Roentgen Society of London; Radiographer to St. George's Hospital; Demonstrator of Physics and Chemistry, and Teacher of Radiography in St. George's Hospital Medical School. Demy 8vo. Twelve Plates from Photographs of X Ray Work. Fifty-two Illustrations. 200 pp. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

**Historical**—Work leading up to the Discovery of the X Rays—The Discovery—**Apparatus and its Management**—Electrical Terms—Sources of Electricity—Induction Coils—Electrostatic Machines—Tubes—Air Pumps—Tube Holders and Stereoscopic Apparatus—Fluorescent Screens—**Practical X Ray Work**—Installations—Radioscopy—Radiography—X Rays in Dentistry—X Rays in Chemistry—X Rays in War—Index.

### List of Plates.

*Frontispiece*—Congenital Dislocation of Hip-Joint.—I., Needle in Finger.—II., Needle in Foot.—III., Revolver Bullet in Calf and Leg.—IV., A Method of Localisation.—V., Stellate Fracture of Patella showing shadow of "Strapping".—VI., Sarcoma.—VII., Six-weeks-old Injury to Elbow showing new Growth of Bone.—VIII., Old Fracture of Tibia and Fibula badly set.—IX., Heart Shadow.—X., Fractured Femur showing Grain of Splint.—XI., Barrell's Method of Localisation.

## India-Rubber and Gutta Percha.

**INDIA-RUBBER AND GUTTA PERCHA.** Translated from the French of T. SEELIGMANN, G. LAMY TORVILHON and H. FALCONNET by JOHN GEDDES MCINTOSH. Royal 8vo.

[*Out of print. Second Edition in preparation.*]

### Contents.

**India-Rubber**—Botanical Origin—Climatology—Soil—Rational Culture and Acclimation of the Different Species of India-Rubber Plants—Methods of Obtaining the Latex—Methods of Preparing Raw or Crude India-Rubber—Classification of the Commercial Species of Raw Rubber—Physical and Chemical Properties of the Latex and of India-Rubber—Mechanical Transformation of Natural Caoutchouc into Washed or Normal Caoutchouc (Purification) and Normal Rubber into Masticated Rubber—Softening, Cutting, Washing, Drying—Preliminary Observations—Vulcanisation of Normal Rubber—Chemical and Physical Properties of Vulcanised Rubber—General Considerations—Hardened Rubber or Ebonite—Considerations on Mineralisation and other Mixtures—Coloration and Dyeing—Analysis of Natural or Normal Rubber and Vulcanised Rubber—Rubber Substitutes—Imitation Rubber.

**Gutta Percha**—Botanical Origin—Climatology—Soil—Rational Culture—Methods of Collection—Classification of the Different Species of Commercial Gutta Percha—Physical and Chemical Properties—Mechanical Transformation—Methods of Analysing—Gutta Percha Substitutes—Index.

## Leather Trades.

**PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE LEATHER INDUSTRY.** By A. M. VILLON. Translated by FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S.; and Corrected by an Eminent Member of the Trade. 500 pp., royal 8vo. 123 Illustrations. Price 21s.; India and Colonies, 22s.; Other Countries, 23s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Preface—Translator's Preface—List of Illustrations.

Part I., **Materials used in Tanning**—Skins: Skin and its Structure; Skins used in Tanning; Various Skins and their Uses—Tannin and Tanning Substances: Tannin; Barks (Oak); Barks other than Oak; Tanning Woods; Tannin-bearing Leaves; Excrescences; Tan-bearing Fruits; Tan-bearing Roots and Bulbs; Tanning Juices; Tanning Substances used in Various Countries; Tannin Extracts; Estimation of Tannin and Tannin Principles.

Part II., **Tanning**—The Installation of a Tannery: Tan Furnaces; Chimneys, Boilers, etc.; Steam Engines—Grinding and Trituration of Tanning Substances: Cutting up Bark; Grinding Bark; The Grinding of Tan Woods; Powdering Fruit, Galls and Grains; Notes on



the Grinding of Bark—Manufacture of Sole Leather: Soaking; Sweating and Unhairing; Plumping and Colouring; Handling; Tanning; Tanning Elephants' Hides; Drying; Striking or Pinning—Manufacture of Dressing Leather: Soaking; Depilation; New Processes for the Depilation of Skins; Tanning; Cow Hides; Horse Hides; Goat Skins; Manufacture of Split Hides—On Various Methods of Tanning: Mechanical Methods; Physical Methods; Chemical Methods; Tanning with Extracts—Quantity and Quality; Quantity; Net Cost; Quality of Leather—Various Manipulations of Tanned Leather: Second Tanning; Grease Stains; Bleaching Leather; Waterproofing Leather; Weighting Tanned Leather; Preservation of Leather—Tanning Various Skins.

Part III., **Currying**—Waxed Calf: Preparation; Shaving; Stretching or Slicking; Oiling the Grain; Oiling the Flesh Side; Whitening and Graining; Waxing; Finishing; Dry Finishing; Finishing in Colour; Cost—White Calf: Finishing in White—Cow Hide for Upper Leathers: Black Cow Hide; White Cow Hide; Coloured Cow Hide—Smooth Cow Hide—Black Leather—Miscellaneous Hides: Horse; Goat; Waxed Goat Skin; Matt Goat Skin—Russia Leather: Russia Leather; Artificial Russia Leather.

Part IV., **Enamelled, Hungary and Chamoy Leather, Morocco, Parchment, Furs and Artificial Leather**—Enamelled Leather: Varnish Manufacture; Application of the Enamel; Enamelling in Colour—Hungary Leather: Preliminary; Wet Work or Preparation; Aluming; Dressing or Loft Work; Tallowing; Hungary Leather from Various Hides—Tawing: Preparatory Operations; Dressing; Dyeing Tawed Skins; Rugs—Chamoy Leather—Morocco: Preliminary Operations, Morocco Tanning: Mordants used in Morocco Manufacture; Natural Colours used in Morocco Dyeing; Artificial Colours; Different Methods of Dyeing; Dyeing with Natural Colours; Dyeing with Aniline Colours; Dyeing with Metallic Salts; Leather Printing; Finishing Morocco; Shagreen; Bronzed Leather—Gilding and Silvering; Gilding; Silvering; Nickel and Cobalt—Parchment—Furs and Furriery: Preliminary Remarks; Indigenous Furs; Foreign Furs from Hot Countries; Foreign Furs from Cold Countries; Furs from Birds' Skins; Preparation of Furs; Dressing; Colouring; Preparation of Birds' Skins; Preservation of Furs—Artificial Leather: Leather made from Scraps; Compressed Leather; American Cloth; Papier Mâché; Linoleum; Artificial Leather.

Part V., **Leather Testing and the Theory of Tanning**—Testing and Analysis of Leather: Physical Testing of Tanned Leather; Chemical Analysis—The Theory of Tanning and the other Operations of the Leather and Skin Industry: Theory of Soaking; Theory of Unhairing; Theory of Swelling; Theory of Handling; Theory of Tanning; Theory of the Action of Tannin on the Skin; Theory of Hungary Leather Making; Theory of Tawing; Theory of Chamoy Leather Making; Theory of Mineral Tanning.

Part VI., **Uses of Leather**—Machine Belts: Manufacture of Belting; Leather Chain Belts; Various Belts, Use of Belts—Boot and Shoe-making: Boots and Shoes; Laces—Saddlery: Composition of a Saddle; Construction of a Saddle—Harness: The Pack Saddle; Harness—Military Equipment—Glove Making—Carriage Building—Mechanical Uses.

Appendix, **The World's Commerce in Leather**—Europe; America; Asia; Africa; Australasia—Index.

**THE LEATHER WORKER'S MANUAL.** Being a Compendium of Practical Recipes and Working Formulæ for Curriers, Bootmakers, Leather Dressers, Blacking Manufacturers, Saddlers, Fancy Leather Workers. By H. C. STANDAGE. 165 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Blackings, Polishes, Glosses, Dressings, Renovators, etc., for Boot and Shoe Leather—Harness Blackings, Dressings, Greases, Compositions, Soaps, and Boot-top Powders and Liquids, etc., etc.—Leather Grinders' Sundries—Currier's Seasonings, Blacking Compounds, Dressings, Finishes, Glosses, etc.—Dyes and Stains for Leather—Miscellaneous Information—Chrome Tannage—Index.

## Books on Pottery, Bricks, Tiles, Glass, etc.

**THE MANUAL OF PRACTICAL POTTING.** Compiled by Experts, and Edited by CHAS. F. BINNS. Revised Third Edition and Enlarged. 200 pp. Price 17s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 18s. 6d.; Other Countries, 20s.; strictly net.



## Contents.

**Introduction.** The Rise and Progress of the Potter's Art—**Bodies.** China and Porcelain Bodies, Parian Bodies, Semi-porcelain and Vitreous Bodies, Mortar Bodies, Earthenwares Granite and C.C. Bodies, Miscellaneous Bodies, Sagger and Crucible Clays, Coloured Bodies, Jasper Bodies, Coloured Bodies for Mosaic Painting, Encaustic Tile Bodies, Body Stains, Coloured Dips—**Glazes.** China Glazes, Ironstone Glazes, Earthenware Glazes, Glazes without Lead, Miscellaneous Glazes, Coloured Glazes, Majolica Colours—**Gold and Gold Colours.** Gold, Purple of Cassius, Marone and Ruby, Enamel Coloured Bases, Enamel Colour Fluxes, Enamel Colours, Mixed Enamel Colours, Antique and Vellum Enamel Colours, Underglaze Colours, Underglaze Colour Fluxes, Mixed Underglaze Colours, Flow Powders, Oils and Varnishes—**Means and Methods.** Reclamation of Waste Gold, The Use of Cobalt, Notes on Enamel Colours, Liquid or Bright Gold—**Classification and Analysis.** Classification of Clay Ware, Lord Playfair's Analysis of Clays, The Markets of the World, Time and Scale of Firing, Weights of Potter's Material, Decorated Goods Count—Comparative Loss of Weight of Clays—Ground Felspar Calculations—The Conversion of Slop Body Recipes into Dry Weight—The Cost of Prepared Earthenware Clay—**Forms and Tables.** Articles of Apprenticeship, Manufacturer's Guide to Stocktaking, Table of Relative Values of Potter's Materials, Hourly Wages Table, Workman's Settling Table, Comparative Guide for Earthenware and China Manufacturers in the use of Slop Flint and Slop Stone, Foreign Terms applied to Earthenware and China Goods, Table for the Conversion of Metrical Weights and Measures on the Continent and South America—**Index.**

**CERAMIC TECHNOLOGY:** Being some Aspects of Technical Science as Applied to Pottery Manufacture. Edited by CHARLES F. BINNS. 100 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Preface—The Chemistry of Pottery—Analysis and Synthesis—Clays and their Components—The Biscuit Oven—Pyrometry—Glazes and their Composition—Colours and Colour-making—Index.

**A TREATISE ON THE CERAMIC INDUSTRIES. A** Complete Manual for Pottery, Tile and Brick Works. By EMILE BOURRY. Translated from the French by WILTON P. RIX, Examiner in Pottery and Porcelain to the City and Guilds of London Technical Institute, Pottery Instructor to the Hanley School Board. Royal 8vo. 760 pp. 323 Illustrations. Price 21s.; India and Colonies, 22s.; Other Countries, 23s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**Part I., General Pottery Methods.** Definition and History. Definitions and Classification of Ceramic Products—Historic Summary of the Ceramic Art—Raw Materials of Bodies. Clays: Pure Clay and Natural Clays—Various Raw Materials: Analogous to Clay—Agglomerative and Agglutinative—Opening—Fusible—Refractory—Trials of Raw Materials—Plastic Bodies. Properties and Composition—Preparation of Raw Materials: Disaggregation—Purification—Preparation of Bodies: By Plastic Method—By Dry Method—By Liquid Method—Formation. Processes of Formation: Throwing—Expression—Moulding by Hand, on the Jolley, by Compression, by Slip Casting—Slapping—Slipping—Drying. Drying of Bodies—Processes of Drying: By Evaporation—By Aeration—By Heating—By Ventilation—By Absorption—Glazes. Composition and Properties—Raw Materials—Manufacture and Application—Firing. Properties of the Bodies and Glazes during Firing—Description of the Kilns—Working of the Kilns—Decoration. Colouring Materials—Processes of Decoration.

**Part II., Special Pottery Methods.** Terra Cottas. Classification: Plain Ordinary, Hollow, Ornamental, Vitrified, and Light Bricks—Ordinary and Black Tiles—Paving Tiles—Pipes—Architectural Terra Cottas—Vases, Statues and Decorative Objects—Common Pottery—Pottery for Water and Filters—Tobacco Pipes—Lustre Ware—Properties and Tests for Terra Cottas—Fireclay Goods. Classification: Argillaceous, Aluminous, Carboniferous, Silicious and Basic Fireclay Goods—Fireclay Mortar (Pug)—Tests for Fireclay Goods—Faïences. Varnished Faïences—Enamelled Faïences—Silicious Faïences—Pipeclay Faïences—Pebble Work—Feldspathic Faïences—Composition, Processes of Manufacture and General Arrangements of Faïence Potteries—Stoneware. Stoneware Properly So-called: Paving Tiles—Pipes—Sanitary Ware—Stoneware for Food Purposes and Chemical Productions—Architectural Stoneware—Vases, Statues and other Decorative Objects—Fine Stoneware—Porcelain. Hard Porcelain for Table Ware and Decoration, for the Fire, for Electrical Conduits, for Mechanical Purposes: Architectural Porcelain, and Dull or Biscuit Porcelain—Soft Phosphated or English Porcelain—Soft Vitreous Porcelain, French and New Sèvres—Argillaceous Soft or Seger's Porcelain—Dull Soft or Parian Porcelain—Dull Feldspathic Soft Porcelain—**Index.**

**ARCHITECTURAL POTTERY.** Bricks, Tiles, Pipes, Enamelled Terra-cottas, Ordinary and Incrusted Quarries, Stoneware Mosaics, Faïences and Architectural Stoneware. By LEON LEFÈVRE. With Five Plates. 950 Illustrations in the Text, and numerous estimates. 500 pp., royal 8vo. Translated from the French by K. H. BIRD, M.A., and W. MOORE BINNS. Price 15s.; India and Colonies, 16s.; Other Countries, 17s. 6d.; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Part I. Plain Undecorated Pottery.—Clays, Bricks, Tiles, Pipes, Chimney Flues, Terra-cotta.

Part II. Made-up or Decorated Pottery.

**THE ART OF RIVETING GLASS, CHINA AND EARTHENWARE.** By J. HOWARTH. Second Edition. Paper Cover. Price 1s. net; by post, home or abroad, 1s. 1d.

**NOTES ON POTTERY CLAYS.** Their Distribution, Properties, Uses and Analyses of Ball Clays, China Clays and China Stone. By JAS. FAIRIE, F.G.S. 132 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 4s.; Other Countries, 4s. 6d.; strictly net.

#### A Reissue of

**THE HISTORY OF THE STAFFORDSHIRE POTTERIES; AND THE RISE AND PROGRESS OF THE MANUFACTURE OF POTTERY AND PORCELAIN.** With References to Genuine Specimens, and Notices of Eminent Potters. By SIMEON SHAW. (Originally Published in 1829.) 265 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Introductory Chapter showing the position of the Pottery Trade at the present time (1899)—Preliminary Remarks—The Potteries, comprising Tunstall, Brownhills, Greenfield and New Field, Golden Hill, Latebrook, Green Lane, Burslem, Longport and Dale Hall, Hot Lane and Cobridge, Hanley and Shelton, Etruria, Stoke, Penkhull, Fenton, Lane Delph, Foley, Lane End—On the Origin of the Art, and its Practice among the early Nations—Manufacture of Pottery, prior to 1700—The Introduction of Red Porcelain by Messrs. Elers, of Bradwell, 1690—Progress of the Manufacture from 1700 to Mr. Wedgwood's commencement in 1760—Introduction of Fluid Glaze—Extension of the Manufacture of Cream Colour—Mr. Wedgwood's Queen's Ware—Jasper, and Appointment of Potter to Her Majesty—Black Printing—Introduction of Porcelain. Mr. W. Littler's Porcelain—Mr. Cookworthy's Discovery of Kaolin and Petuntse, and Patent—Sold to Mr. Champion—resold to the New Hall Com.—Extension of Term—Blue Printed Pottery. Mr. Turner, Mr. Spode (1), Mr. Baddeley, Mr. Spode (2), Messrs. Turner, Mr. Wood. Mr. Wilson, Mr. Minton—Great Change in Patterns of Blue Printed—Introduction of Lustre Pottery. Improvements in Pottery and Porcelain subsequent to 1800.

#### A Reissue of

**THE CHEMISTRY OF THE SEVERAL NATURAL AND ARTIFICIAL HETEROGENEOUS COMPOUNDS USED IN MANUFACTURING PORCELAIN, GLASS AND POTTERY.** By SIMEON SHAW. (Originally published in 1837.) 750 pp. Royal 8vo. Price 14s.; India and Colonies, 15s.; Other Countries, 16s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**PART I., ANALYSIS AND MATERIALS.—Introduction:** Laboratory and Apparatus: **Elements—Temperature—Acids and Alkalies—The Earths—Metals.**

**PART II., SYNTHESIS AND COMPOUNDS.—Science of Mixing—Bodies:** Porcelain—Hard, Porcelain—Fritted Bodies, Porcelain—Raw Bodies, Porcelain—Soft, Fritted Bodies, Raw Bodies, Stone Bodies, Ironstone, Dry Bodies, Chemical Utensils, Fritted Jasper, Fritted Pearl, Fritted Drab, Raw Chemical Utensils, Raw Stone, Raw Jasper, Raw Pearl, Raw Mortar, Raw Drab, Raw Brown, Raw Fawn, Raw Cane, Raw Red Porous, Raw Egyptian, Earthenware, Queen's Ware, Cream Colour, Blue and Fancy Printed, Dipped and Mocha, Chalky, Rings, Stilts, etc.—**Glazes:** Porcelain—Hard Fritted Porcelain—Soft Fritted Porcelain—Soft Raw, Cream Colour Porcelain, Blue Printed Porcelain, Fritted Glazes, Analysis of Fritt, Analysis of Glaze, Coloured Glazes, Dips, Smears and Washes; **Glasses:** Flint Glass, Coloured Glasses, Artificial Garnet, Artificial Emerald, Artificial Amethyst, Artificial Sapphire, Artificial Opal, Plate Glass, Crown Glass, Broad Glass, Bottle Glass, Phosphoric Glass, British Steel Glass, Glass-Staining and Painting, Engraving on Glass, Dr. Faraday's Experiments—**Colours:** Colour Making, Fluxes or Solvents, Components of the Colours: **Reds, etc., from Gold,** Carmine or Rose Colour, Purple, Reds, etc., from Iron, Blues, Yellows, Greens, Blacks. White, Silver for Burnishing, Gold for Burnishing, Printer's Oil, Lustres.

TABLES OF THE CHARACTERISTICS OF CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES.

# Glassware, Glass Staining and Painting.

**RECIPES FOR FLINT GLASS MAKING.** By a British Glass Master and Mixer. Sixty Recipes. Being Leaves from the Mixing Book of several experts in the Flint Glass Trade, containing up-to-date recipes and valuable information as to Crystal, Demi-crystal and Coloured Glass in its many varieties. It contains the recipes for cheap metal suited to pressing, blowing, etc., as well as the most costly crystal and ruby. Crown 8vo. Price for United Kingdom, 10s. 6d.; Abroad, 15s.; United States, \$4; strictly net.

## Contents.

Ruby—Ruby from Copper—Flint for using with the Ruby for Coating—A German Metal—Cornelian, or Alabaster—Sapphire Blue—Crysophis—Opal—Turquoise Blue—Gold Colour—Dark Green—Green (common)—Green for Malachite—Blue for Malachite—Black for Melachite—Black—Common Canary Batch—Canary—White Opaque Glass—Sealing-wax Red—Flint—Flint Glass (Crystal and Demi)—Achromatic Glass—Paste Glass—White Enamel—Firestone—Dead White (for moons)—White Agate—Canary—Canary Enamel—Index.

## A TREATISE ON THE ART OF GLASS PAINTING.

Prefaced with a Review of Ancient Glass. By ERNEST R. SUFFLING. With One Coloured Plate and Thirty-seven Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 140 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. net.

## Contents.

A Short History of Stained Glass—Designing Scale Drawings—Cartoons and the Cut Line—Various Kinds of Glass Cutting for Windows—The Colours and Brushes used in Glass Painting—Painting on Glass, Dispersed Patterns—Diapered Patterns—Aciding—Firing—Fret Lead Glazing—Index.

## PAINTING ON GLASS AND PORCELAIN AND ENAMEL PAINTING.

A Complete Introduction to the Preparation of all the Colours and Fluxes used for Painting on Porcelain, Enamel, Faience and Stoneware, the Coloured Pastes and Coloured Glasses, together with a Minute Description of the Firing of Colours and Enamels. By FELIX HERMANN, Technical Chemist. With Eighteen Illustrations. 300 pp. Translated from the German second and enlarged Edition. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.



**Contents.**

History of Glass Painting—The Articles to be Painted: Glass, Porcelain, Enamel, Stone-ware, Faience—Pigments: Metallic Pigments: Antimony Oxide, Naples Yellow, Barium Chromate, Lead Chromate, Silver Chloride, Chromic Oxide—Fluxes: Fluxes, Felspar, Quartz, Purifying Quartz, Sedimentation, Quenching, Borax, Boracic Acid, Potassium and Sodium Carbonates, Rocaille Flux—Preparation of the Colours for Glass Painting—The Colour Pastes—The Coloured Glasses—Composition of the Porcelain Colours—The Enamel Colours: Enamels for Artistic Work—Metallic Ornamentation: Porcelain Gilding, Glass Gilding—Firing the Colours: Remarks on Firing: Firing Colours on Glass, Firing Colours on Porcelain; The Muffle—Accidents occasionally Supervening during the Process of Firing—Remarks on the Different Methods of Painting on Glass, Porcelain, etc.—Appendix: Cleaning Old Glass Paintings.

## Paper Staining.

**THE DYEING OF PAPER PULP.** A Practical Treatise for the use of Papermakers, Paperstainers, Students and others. By JULIUS ERFURT, Manager of a Paper Mill. Translated into English and Edited with Additions by JULIUS HÜBNER, F.C.S., Lecturer on Papermaking at the Manchester Municipal Technical School. With Illustrations and **157 patterns of paper dyed in the pulp.** Royal 8vo, 180 pp. Price 15s.; India and Colonies, 16s.; Other Countries, 20s.; strictly net. Limited edition.

**Contents.**

Behaviour of the Paper Fibres during the Process of Dyeing, Theory of the Mordant—Colour Fixing Mediums (Mordants)—Influence of the Quality of the Water Used—Inorganic Colours—Organic Colours—Practical Application of the Coal Tar Colours according to their Properties and their Behaviour towards the Different Paper Fibres—Dyed Patterns on Various Pulp Mixtures—Dyeing to Shade—Index.

## Enamelling on Metal.

**ENAMELS AND ENAMELLING.** For Enamel Makers, Workers in Gold and Silver, and Manufacturers of Objects of Art. By PAUL RANDAU. Translated from the German. With Sixteen Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 180 pp. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Composition and Properties of Glass—Raw Materials for the Manufacture of Enamels—Substances Added to Produce Opacity—Fluxes—Pigments—Decolorising Agents—Testing the Raw Materials with the Blow-pipe Flame—Subsidiary Materials—Preparing the Materials for Enamel Making—Mixing the Materials—The Preparation of Technical Enamels, The Enamel Mass—Appliances for Smelting the Enamel Mass—Smelting the Charge—Composition of Enamel Masses—Composition of Masses for Ground Enamels—Composition of Cover Enamels—Preparing the Articles for Enamelling—Applying the Enamel—Firing the Ground Enamel—Applying and Firing the Cover Enamel or Glaze—Repairing Defects in Enamelled Ware—Enamelling Articles of Sheet Metal—Decorating Enamelled Ware—Specialties in Enamelling—Dial-plate Enamelling—Enamels for Artistic Purposes, Recipes for Enamels of Various Colours—Index.

**THE ART OF ENAMELLING ON METAL.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. Twenty-eight Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 60 pp. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s.; strictly net.

## Silk Manufacture.

**SILK THROWING AND WASTE SILK SPINNING.** By HOLLINS RAYNER. Demy 8vo. 170 pp. 117 Illus. Price 5s.; Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

The Silkworm—Cocoon Reeling and Qualities of Silk—Silk Throwing—Silk Wastes—The Preparation of Silk Waste for Degumming—Silk Waste Degumming, Schapping and Discharging—The Opening and Dressing of Wastes—Silk Waste "Drawing" or "Preparing" Machinery—Long Spinning—Short Spinning—Spinning and Finishing Processes—Utilisation of Waste Products—Noil Spinning—Exhaust Noil Spinning.



# Books on Textile and Dyeing Subjects.

## THE CHEMICAL TECHNOLOGY OF TEXTILE

**FIBRES:** Their Origin, Structure, Preparation, Washing, Bleaching, Dyeing, Printing and Dressing. By Dr. GEORG VON GEORGIEVICS. Translated from the German by CHARLES SALTER. 320 pp. Forty-seven Illustrations. Royal 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s. net.

### Contents.

The Textile Fibres—Washing, Bleaching, Carbonising—Mordants and Mor-danting—Dyeing—Printing—Dressing and Finishing.

## POWER-LOOM WEAVING AND YARN NUMBERING,

According to Various Systems, with Conversion Tables. Translated from the German of ANTHON GRUNER. **With Twenty-six Diagrams in Colours.** 150 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Power-Loom Weaving in General. Various Systems of Looms—Mounting and Starting the Power-Loom. English Looms—Tappet or Treadle Looms—Dobbies—General Remarks on the Numbering, Reeling and Packing of Yarn—Appendix—Useful Hints. Calculating Warps—Weft Calculations—Calculations of Cost Price in Hanks.

## TEXTILE RAW MATERIALS AND THEIR CON- VERSION INTO YARNS.

(The Study of the Raw Materials and the Technology of the Spinning Process.) By JULIUS ZIPSER. Translated from German by CHARLES SALTER. 302 Illustrations. 500 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

#### PART I.—The Raw Materials Used in the Textile Industry.

MINERAL RAW MATERIALS. VEGETABLE RAW MATERIALS. ANIMAL RAW MATERIALS.

#### PART II.—The Technology of Spinning or the Conversion of Textile Raw Materials into Yarn.

SPINNING VEGETABLE RAW MATERIALS. Cotton Spinning—Installation of a Cotton Mill—Spinning Waste Cotton and Waste Cotton Yarns—Flax Spinning—Fine Spinning—Tow Spinning—Hemp Spinning—Spinning Hemp Tow String—Jute Spinning—Spinning Jute Line Yarn—Utilising Jute Waste.

#### PART III.—Spinning Animal Raw Materials.

Spinning Carded Woollen Yarn—Finishing Yarn—Worsted Spinning—Finishing Worsted Yarn—Artificial Wool or Shoddy Spinning—Shoddy and Mungo Manufacture—Spinning Shoddy and other Wool Substitutes—Spinning Waste Silk—Chappe Silk—Fine Spinning—Index.

## THE GRAMMAR OF TEXTILE DESIGNING. By H.

NISBET. With many Illustrations.

[In the press.]

### Contents.

Introduction—The Plain or Calico Weave and its Modifications—Twill and Kindred Weaves—Diamond and Kindred Weaves—Bedford Cords—Backed Fabrics—Fustians—Terry Pile Fabrics—Gauze and Leno Fabrics—Tissue, Lappet and Swivel Figuring—Ondulé and Lapped Effects.

## HOME LACE-MAKING. A Handbook for Teachers and

Pupils. By M. E. W. MILROY. Illustrated with Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 64 pp. Price 1s. net, post free in United Kingdom; Abroad, 1s. 6d. net.

**THE CHEMISTRY OF HAT MANUFACTURING.** Lectures delivered before the Hat Manufacturers' Association. Revised and Edited by ALBERT SHONK. With 16 Illustrations. [*In the press.*]

**Contents.**

Textile Fibres—Wool, Hair, etc.—Water, Chemistry of, and Impurities in—Tests of Purity—Acids and Alkalies—Boric Acid, Borax, Soap—Shellac, Wood Spirit—Stiffening and Proofing—Mordants: their Nature and Use—Dyestuffs and Colours—Dyeing of Wool and Fur—Optical Properties of Colours.

**THE TECHNICAL TESTING OF YARNS AND TEXTILE FABRICS.** With Reference to Official Specifications. Translated from the German of Dr. J. HERZFELD. Second Edition. Sixty-nine Illustrations. 200 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Yarn Testing. Determining the Yarn Number—Testing the Length of Yarns—Examination of the External Appearance of Yarn—Determining the Twist of Yarn and Twist—Determination of Tensile Strength and Elasticity—Estimating the Percentage of Fat in Yarn—Determination of Moisture (Conditioning)—Appendix.

**DECORATIVE AND FANCY TEXTILE FABRICS.**

By R. T. LORD. Manufacturers and Designers of Carpets, Damask, Dress and all Textile Fabrics. 200 pp. Demy 8vo. 132 Designs and Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics—A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics (continued)—A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics (continued)—A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics (continued)—Hints for Ruled-paper Draughtsmen—The Jacquard Machine—Brussels and Wilton Carpets—Tapestry Carpets—Ingrain Carpets—Axminster Carpets—Damask and Tapestry Fabrics—Scarf Silks and Ribbons—Silk Handkerchiefs—Dress Fabrics—Mantle Cloths—Figured Plush—Bed Quilts—Calico Printing.

**THEORY AND PRACTICE OF DAMASK WEAVING.**

By H. KINZER and K. WALTER. Royal 8vo. Eighteen Folding Plates. Six Illustrations. Translated from the German. 110 pp. Price 8s. 6d.; Colonies, 9s.; Other Countries, 9s. 6d.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

The Various Sorts of Damask Fabrics—Drill (Ticking, Handloom-made)—Whole Damask for Tablecloths—Damask with Ground- and Connecting-warp Threads—Furniture Damask—Lampas or Hangings—Church Damasks—The Manufacture of Whole Damask—Damask Arrangement with and without Cross-Shedding—The Altered Cone-arrangement—The Principle of the Corner Lifting Cord—The Roller Principle—The Combination of the Jacquard with the so-called Damask Machine—The Special Damask Machine—The Combination of Two Tyings.

**FAULTS IN THE MANUFACTURE OF WOOLLEN GOODS AND THEIR PREVENTION.** By NICOLAS REISER. Translated from the Second German Edition. Crown 8vo.

Sixty-three Illustrations. 170 pp. Price 5s.; Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Improperly Chosen Raw Material or Improper Mixtures—Wrong Treatment of the Material in Washing, Carbonisation, Drying, Dyeing and Spinning—Improper Spacing of the Goods in the Loom—Wrong Placing of Colours—Wrong Weight or Width of the Goods—Breaking of Warp and Weft Threads—Presence of Doubles, Singles, Thick, Loose, and too Hard Twisted Threads as well as Tangles, Thick Knots and the Like—Errors in Cross-weaving—Inequalities, *i.e.*, Bands and Stripes—Dirty Borders—Defective Selvedges—Holes and Buttons—Rubbed Places—Creases—Spots—Loose and Bad Colours—Badly Dyed Selvedges—Hard Goods—Brittle Goods—Uneven Goods—Removal of Bands, Stripes, Creases and Spots.

**SPINNING AND WEAVING CALCULATIONS**, especially relating to Woollens. From the German of N. REISER. Thirty-four Illustrations. Tables. 160 pp. Demy 8vo. 1904. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Calculating the Raw Material—Proportion of Different Grades of Wool to Furnish a Mixture at a Given Price—Quantity to Produce a Given Length—Yarn Calculations—Yarn Number—Working Calculations—Calculating the Reed Count—Cost of Weaving, etc.

**WATERPROOFING OF FABRICS.** By Dr. S. MIERZINSKI. Crown 8vo. 104 pp. 29 Illus. Price 5s.; Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Introduction—Preliminary Treatment of the Fabric—Waterproofing with Acetate of Alumina—Impregnation of the Fabric—Drying—Waterproofing with Paraffin—Waterproofing with Ammonium Cuprate—Waterproofing with Metallic Oxides—Coloured Waterproof Fabrics—Waterproofing with Gelatine, Tannin, Caseinate of Lime and other Bodies—Manufacture of Tarpaulin—British Waterproofing Patents—Index.

**HOW TO MAKE A WOOLLEN MILL PAY.** By JOHN MACKIE. Crown 8vo. 76 pp. 1904. Price 3s. 6d.; Colonies, 4s.; Other Countries, 4s. 6d.; net.

**Contents.**

Blends, Piles, or Mixtures of Clean Scoured Wools—Dyed Wool Book—The Order Book—Pattern Duplicate Books—Management and Oversight—Constant Inspection of Mill Departments—Importance of Delivering Goods to Time, Shade, Strength, etc.—Plums.

(For "Textile Soaps" see p. 7.)

## Dyeing, Colour Printing, Matching and Dye-stuffs.

**THE COLOUR PRINTING OF CARPET YARNS.** Manual for Colour Chemists and Textile Printers. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Seventeen Illustrations. 136 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Structure and Constitution of Wool Fibre—Yarn Scouring—Scouring Materials—Water for Scouring—Bleaching Carpet Yarns—Colour Making for Yarn Printing—Colour Printing Pastes—Colour Recipes for Yarn Printing—Science of Colour Mixing—Matching of Colours—"Hank" Printing—Printing Tapestry Carpet Yarns—Yarn Printing—Steaming Printed Yarns—Washing of Steamed Yarns—Aniline Colours Suitable for Yarn Printing—Glossary of Dyes and Dye-wares used in Wood Yarn Printing—Appendix.

**THE SCIENCE OF COLOUR MIXING.** A Manual intended for the use of Dyers, Calico Printers and Colour Chemists. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Forty-one Illustrations, **Five Coloured Plates, and Four Plates showing Eleven Dyed Specimens of Fabrics.** 132 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Colour a Sensation; Colours of Illuminated Bodies; Colours of Opaque and Transparent Bodies; Surface Colour—Analysis of Light; Spectrum; Homogeneous Colours; Ready Method of Obtaining a Spectrum—Examination of Solar Spectrum; The Spectroscope and Its Construction; Colourists' Use of the Spectroscope—Colour by Absorption; Solutions and Dyed Fabrics; Dichroic Coloured Fabrics in Gaslight—Colour Primaries of the Scientist *versus* the Dyer and Artist; Colour Mixing by Rotation and Lye Dyeing; Hue, Purity, Brightness; Tints; Shades, Scales, Tones, Sad and Sombre Colours—Colour Mixing; Pure and Impure Greens, Orange and Violets; Large Variety of Shades from few Colours; Consideration of the Practical Primaries; Red, Yellow and Blue—Secondary Colours; Nomenclature of Violet and Purple Group; Tints and Shades of Violet; Changes in Artificial Light—Tertiary Shades; Broken Hues; Absorption Spectra of Tertiary Shades—Appendix: Four Plates with Dyed Specimens Illustrating Text—Index.



**DYERS' MATERIALS:** An Introduction to the Examination, Evaluation and Application of the most important Substances used in Dyeing, Printing, Bleaching and Finishing. By PAUL HEERMAN, Ph.D. Translated from the German by. A C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). Twenty-four Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 150 pp. Price 5s. ; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d. ; Other Countries, 6s. ; strictly net.

**COLOUR MATCHING ON TEXTILES.** A Manual intended for the use of Students of Colour Chemistry, Dyeing and Textile Printing. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Coloured Frontispiece. Twenty-nine Illustrations and **Fourteen Specimens of Dyed Fabrics.** Demy 8vo. 132 pp. Price 7s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 8s. ; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. ; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Colour Vision and Structure of the Eye—Perception of Colour—Primary and Complementary Colour Sensations—Daylight for Colour Matching—Selection of a Good Pure Light—Diffused Daylight, Direct Sunlight, Blue Skylight, Variability of Daylight, etc., etc.—Matching of Hues—Purity and Luminosity of Colours—Matching Bright Hues—Aid of Tinted Films—Matching Difficulties Arising from Contrast—Examination of Colours by Reflected and Transmitted Lights—Effect of Lustre and Transparency of Fibres in Colour Matching—Matching of Colours on Velvet Pile—Optical Properties of Dye-stuffs Dichroism. Fluorescence—Use of Tinted Mediums—Orange Film—Defects of the Eye—Yellowing of the Lens—Colour Blindness, etc.—Matching of Dyed Silk Trimmings and Linings and Bindings—Its Difficulties—Behaviour of Shades in Artificial Light—Colour Matching of Old Fabrics, etc.—Examination of Dyed Colours under the Artificial Lights—Electric Arc, Magnesium and Dufton, Gardner Lights, Welsbach, Acetylene, etc.—Testing Qualities of an Illuminant—Influence of the Absorption Spectrum in Changes of Hue under the Artificial Lights—Study of the Causes of Abnormal Modifications of Hue, etc.

**COLOUR: A HANDBOOK OF THE THEORY OF COLOUR.** By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. **With Ten Coloured Plates** and Seventy-two Illustrations. 160 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 8s. ; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. ; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Colour and Its Production—Cause of Colour in Coloured Bodies—Colour Phenomena and Theories—The Physiology of Light—Contrast—Colour in Decoration and Design—Measurement of Colour.

#### Reissue of

**THE ART OF DYEING WOOL, SILK AND COTTON.**

Translated from the French of M. HELLOT, M. MACQUER and M. LE PILEUR D'APLIGNY. First Published in English in 1789. Six Plates. Demy 8vo. 446 pp. Price 5s. ; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d. ; Other Countries, 6s. ; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Part I., The Art of Dyeing Wool and Woollen Cloth, Stuffs, Yarn, Worsted, etc. Part II., The Art of Dyeing Silk. Part III., The Art of Dyeing Cotton and Linen Thread, together with the Method of Stamping Silks, Cottons, etc.

**THE CHEMISTRY OF DYE-STUFFS.** By Dr. GEORG VON GEORGIEVICS. Translated from the Second German Edition. 412 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d. ; India and Colonies, 11s. ; Other Countries, 12s. ; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Introduction—Coal Tar—Intermediate Products in the Manufacture of Dye-stuffs—The Artificial Dye-stuffs (Coal-tar Dyes)—Nitroso Dye-stuffs—Nitro Dye-stuffs—Azo Dye-stuffs—Substantive Cotton Dye-stuffs—Azoxystilbene Dye-stuffs—Hydrazones—Ketoneimides—Triphenylmethane Dye-stuffs—Rosolic Acid Dye-stuffs—Xanthene Dye-stuffs—Xanthone Dye-stuffs—Flavones—Oxyketone Dye-stuffs—Quinoline and Acridine Dye-stuffs—Quinonimide or Diphenylamine Dye-stuffs—The Azine Group: Eurhodines, Safranines and Indulines—Eurhodines—Safranines—Quinoxalines—Indigo—Dye-stuffs of Unknown Constitution—Sulphur or Sulphine Dye-stuffs—Development of the Artificial Dye-stuff Industry—The Natural Dye-stuffs—Mineral Colours—Index.



## THE DYEING OF COTTON FABRICS: A Practical

Handbook for the Dyer and Student. By FRANKLIN BEECH, Practical Colourist and Chemist. 272 pp. Forty-four Illustrations of Bleaching and Dyeing Machinery. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Structure and Chemistry of the Cotton Fibre—Scouring and Bleaching of Cotton—Dyeing Machinery and Dyeing Manipulations—Principles and Practice of Cotton Dyeing—Direct Dyeing; Direct Dyeing followed by Fixation with Metallic Salts: Direct Dyeing followed by Fixation with Developers; Direct Dyeing followed by Fixation with Couplers; Dyeing on Tannic Mordant; Dyeing on Metallic Mordant; Production of Colour Direct upon Cotton Fibres; Dyeing Cotton by Impregnation with Dye-stuff Solution—Dyeing Union (Mixed Cotton and Wool) Fabrics—Dyeing Half Silk (Cotton-Silk, Satin) Fabrics—Operations following Dyeing—Washing, Soaping, Drying—Testing of the Colour of Dyed Fabrics—Experimental Dyeing and Comparative Dye Testing—Index.

The book contains numerous recipes for the production on Cotton Fabrics of all kinds of a great range of colours.

## THE DYEING OF WOOLLEN FABRICS. By FRANKLIN

BEECH, Practical Colourist and Chemist. Thirty-three Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 228 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. net.

### Contents.

The Wool Fibre—Structure, Composition and Properties—Processes Preparatory to Dyeing—Scouring and Bleaching of Wool—Dyeing Machinery and Dyeing Manipulations—Loose Wool Dyeing, Yarn Dyeing and Piece Dyeing Machinery—The Principles and Practice of Wool Dyeing—Properties of Wool Dyeing—Methods of Wool Dyeing—Groups of Dyes—Dyeing with the Direct Dyes—Dyeing with Basic Dyes—Dyeing with Acid Dyes—Dyeing with Mordant Dyes—Level Dyeing—Blacks on Wool—Reds on Wool—Mordanting of Wool—Orange Shades on Wool—Yellow Shades on Wool—Green Shades on Wool—Blue Shades on Wool—Violet Shades on Wool—Brown Shades on Wool—Mode Colours on Wool—Dyeing Union (Mixed Cotton Wool) Fabrics—Dyeing of Gloria—Operations following Dyeing—Washing, Soaping, Drying—Experimental Dyeing and Comparative Dye Testing—Testing of the Colour of Dyed Fabrics—Index.

# Bleaching and Washing.

## A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE BLEACHING OF LINEN AND COTTON YARN AND FABRICS. By

L. TAILFER, Chemical and Mechanical Engineer. Translated from the French by JOHN GEDDES McINTOSH. Demy 8vo. 303 pp. Twenty Illusts. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

General Considerations on Bleaching—Steeping—Washing: Its End and Importance—Roller Washing Machines—Wash Wheel (Dash Wheel)—Stocks or Wash Mill—Squeezing—Lye Boiling—Lye Boiling with Milk of Lime—Lye Boiling with Soda Lyes—Description of Lye Boiling Keirs—Operations of Lye Boiling—Concentration of Lyes—Mather and Platt's Keir—Description of the Keir—Saturation of the Fabrics—Alkali used in Lye Boiling—Examples of Processes—Soap—Action of Soap in Bleaching—Quality and Quantity of Soaps to use in the Lye—Soap Lyes or Scalds—Soap Scouring Stocks—Bleaching on Grass or on the Bleaching Green or Lawn—Chemicking—Remarks on Chlorides and their Decolourising Action—Chemicking Cisterns—Chemicking—Strengths, etc.—Sours—Properties of the Acids—Effects Produced by Acids—Souring Cisterns—Drying—Drying by Steam—Drying by Hot Air—Drying by Air—Damages to Fabrics in Bleaching—Yarn Mildew—Fermentation—Iron Rust Spots—Spots from Contact with Wood—Spots incurred on the Bleaching Green—Damages arising from the Machines—Examples of Methods used in Bleaching—Linen—Cotton—The Valuation of Caustic and Carbonated Alkali (Soda) and General Information Regarding these Bodies—Object of Alkalimetry—Titration of Carbonate of Soda—Comparative Table of Different Degrees of Alkalimetric Strength—Five Problems relative to Carbonate of Soda—Caustic Soda, its Properties and Uses—Mixtures of Carbonated and Caustic Alkali—Note on a Process of Manufacturing Caustic Soda and Mixtures of Caustic

and Carbonated Alkali (Soda)—Chlorometry—Titration—Wagner's Chlorometric Method—Preparation of Standard Solutions—Apparatus for Chlorine Valuation—Alkali in Excess in Decolourising Chlorides—Chlorine and Decolourising Chlorides—Synopsis—Chlorine—Chloride of Lime—Hypochlorite of Soda—Brochoki's Chlorozone—Various Decolourising Hypochlorites—Comparison of Chloride of Lime and Hypochlorite of Soda—Water—Qualities of Water—Hardness—Dervaux's Purifier—Testing the Purified Water—Different Plant for Purification—Filters—Bleaching of Yarn—Weight of Yarn—Lye Boiling—Chemicking—Washing—Bleaching of Cotton Yarn—The Installation of a Bleach Works—Water Supply—Steam Boilers—Steam Distribution Pipes—Engines—Keirs—Washing—Machines—Stocks—Wash Wheels—Chemicking and Souring Cisterns—Various—Buildings—Addenda—Energy of Decolourising Chlorides and Bleaching by Electricity and Ozone—Energy of Decolourising Chlorides—Chlorides—Production of Chlorine and Hypochlorites by Electrolysis—Lunge's Process for increasing the intensity of the Bleaching Power of Chloride of Lime—Trilfer's Process for Removing the Excess of Lime or Soda from Decolourising Chlorides—Bleaching by Ozone.

## Cotton Spinning and Combing.

**COTTON SPINNING** (First Year). By THOMAS THORNLEY, Spinning Master, Bolton Technical School. 160 pp. Eighty-four Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Second Impression. Price 3s.; Abroad, 3s. 6d.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Syllabus and Examination Papers of the City and Guilds of London Institute—Cultivation, Classification, Ginning, Baling and Mixing of the Raw Cotton—Bale-Breakers, Mixing Lattices and Hopper Feeders—Opening and Scutching—Carding—Indexes.

**COTTON SPINNING** (Intermediate, or Second Year). By THOMAS THORNLEY. 180 pp. Seventy Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 5s.; India and British Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Syllabuses and Examination Papers of the City and Guilds of London Institute—The Combing Process—The Drawing Frame—Bobbin and Fly Frames—Mule Spinning—Ring Spinning—General Indexes.

**COTTON SPINNING** (Honours, or Third Year). By THOMAS THORNLEY. 216 pp. Seventy-four Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 5s.; India and British Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Syllabuses and Examination Papers of the City and Guilds of London Institute—Cotton—The Practical Manipulation of Cotton Spinning Machinery—Doubling and Winding—Reeling—Warping—Production and Costs—Main Driving—Arrangement of Machinery and Mill Planning—Waste and Waste Spinning—Indexes.

**COTTON COMBING MACHINES.** By THOS. THORNLEY, Spinning Master, Technical School, Bolton. Demy 8vo. 117 Illustrations. 300 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d. net.

### Contents.

The Sliver Lap Machine and the Ribbon Cap Machine—General Description of the Heilmann Comber—The Cam Shaft—On the Detaching and Attaching Mechanism of the Comber—Resetting of Combers—The Erection of a Heilmann Comber—Stop Motions: Various Calculations—Various Notes and Discussions—Cotton Combing Machines of Continental Make—Index.

# Collieries and Mines.

**RECOVERY WORK AFTER PIT FIRES.** By ROBERT LAMPRECHT, Mining Engineer and Manager. Translated from the German. Illustrated by Six large Plates, containing Seventy-six Illustrations. 175 pp., demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**Causes of Pit Fires—Preventive Regulations:** (1) The Outbreak and Rapid Extension of a Shaft Fire can be most reliably prevented by Employing little or no Combustible Material in the Construction of the Shaft; (2) Precautions for Rapidly Localising an Outbreak of Fire in the Shaft; (3) Precautions to be Adopted in case those under 1 and 2 Fail or Prove Inefficient. **Precautions against Spontaneous Ignition of Coal.** Precautions for Preventing Explosions of Fire-damp and Coal Dust. Employment of Electricity in Mining, particularly in Fiery Pits. Experiments on the Ignition of Fire-damp Mixtures and Clouds of Coal Dust by Electricity—**Indications of an Existing or Incipient Fire—Appliances for Working in Irrespirable Gases:** Respiratory Apparatus; Apparatus with Air Supply Pipes; Reservoir Apparatus; Oxygen Apparatus—**Extinguishing Pit Fires:** (a) Chemical Means; (b) Extinction with Water. Dragging down the Burning Masses and Packing with Clay; (c) Insulating the Seat of the Fire by Dams. Dam Building. Analyses of Fire Gases. Isolating the Seat of a Fire with Dams: Working in Irrespirable Gases ("Gas-diving"): Air-Lock Work. Complete Isolation of the Pit. Flooding a Burning Section isolated by means of Dams. Wooden Dams: Masonry Dams. Examples of Cylindrical and Dome-shaped Dams. Dam Doors: Flooding the Whole Pit—**Rescue Stations:** (a) Stations above Ground; (b) Underground Rescue Stations—**Spontaneous Ignition of Coal in Bulk—Index.**

**VENTILATION IN MINES.** By ROBERT WABNER, Mining Engineer. Translated from the German. Royal 8vo. Thirty Plates and Twenty-two Illustrations. 240 pp. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

**The Causes of the Contamination of Pit Air—The Means of Preventing the Dangers resulting from the Contamination of Pit Air—Calculating the Volume of Ventilating Current necessary to free Pit Air from Contamination—Determination of the Resistance Opposed to the Passage of Air through the Pit—Laws of Resistance and Formulæ therefor—Fluctuations in the Temperament or Specific Resistance of a Pit—Means for Providing a Ventilating Current in the Pit—Mechanical Ventilation—Ventilators and Fans—Determining the Theoretical, Initial, and True (Effective) Depression of the Centrifugal Fan—New Types of Centrifugal Fan of Small Diameter and High Working Speed—Utilising the Ventilating Current to the utmost Advantage and distributing the same through the Workings—Artificially retarding the Ventilating Current—Ventilating Preliminary Workings—Blind Headings—Separate Ventilation—Supervision of Ventilation—INDEX.**

**HAULAGE AND WINDING APPLIANCES USED IN MINES.** By CARL VOLK. Translated from the German. Royal 8vo. With Six Plates and 148 Illustrations. 150 pp. Price 8s. 6d.; Colonies, 9s.; Other Countries, 9s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Haulage Appliances—Ropes—Haulage Tubs and Tracks—Cages and Winding Appliances—Winding Engines for Vertical Shafts—Winding without Ropes—Haulage in Levels and Inclines—The Working of Underground Engines—Machinery for Downhill Haulage.

# Dental Metallurgy.

**DENTAL METALLURGY: MANUAL FOR STUDENTS AND DENTISTS.** By A. B. GRIFFITHS, Ph.D. Demy 8vo. Thirty-six Illustrations. 200 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Introduction—Physical Properties of the Metals—Action of Certain Agents on Metals—Alloys—Action of Oral Bacteria on Alloys—Theory and Varieties of Blowpipes—Fluxes—Furnaces and Appliances—Heat and Temperature—Gold—Mercury—Silver—Iron—Copper—Zinc—Magnesium—Cadmium—Tin—Lead—Aluminium—Antimony—Bismuth—Palladium—Platinum—Iridium—Nickel—Practical Work—Weights and Measures.



# Engineering, Smoke Prevention and Metallurgy.

**THE PREVENTION OF SMOKE.** Combined with the Economical Combustion of Fuel. By W. C. POPPLEWELL, M.Sc., A.M.Inst., C.E., Consulting Engineer. Forty-six Illustrations. 190 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Fuel and Combustion—Hand Firing in Boiler Furnaces—Stoking by Mechanical Means—Powdered Fuel—Gaseous Fuel—Efficiency and Smoke Tests of Boilers—Some Standard Smoke Trials—The Legal Aspect of the Smoke Question—The Best Means to be adopted for the Prevention of Smoke—Index.

**GAS AND COAL DUST FIRING.** A Critical Review of the Various Appliances Patented in Germany for this purpose since 1885. By ALBERT PÜTSCH. 130 pp. Demy 8vo. Translated from the German. With 103 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Generators—Generators Employing Steam—Stirring and Feed Regulating Appliances—Direct Generators—Burners—Regenerators and Recuperators—Glass Smelting Furnaces—Metallurgical Furnaces—Pottery Furnace—Coal Dust Firing—Index.

**THE HARDENING AND TEMPERING OF STEEL IN THEORY AND PRACTICE.** By FRIDOLIN REISER. Translated from the German of the Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 120 pp. Price 5s.; India and British Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net.

## Contents.

Steel—Chemical and Physical Properties of Steel, and their Casual Connection—Classification of Steel according to Use—Testing the Quality of Steel—Steel-Hardening—Investigation of the Causes of Failure in Hardening—Regeneration of Steel Spoilt in the Furnace—Welding Steel—Index.

**SIDEROLOGY: THE SCIENCE OF IRON** (The Constitution of Iron Alloys and Slags). Translated from German of HANNS FREIHERR V. JÜPTNER. 350 pp. Demy 8vo. Eleven Plates and Ten Illustrations. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; net.

## Contents.

The Theory of Solution.—Solutions—Molten Alloys—Varieties of Solutions—Osmotic Pressure—Relation between Osmotic Pressure and other Properties of Solutions—Osmotic Pressure and Molecular Weight of the Dissolved Substance—Solutions of Gases—Solid Solutions—Solubility—Diffusion—Electrical Conductivity—Constitution of Electrolytes and Metals—Thermal Expansion. **Micrography.**—Microstructure—The Micrographic Constituents of Iron—Relation between Micrographical Composition, Carbon-Content, and Thermal Treatment of Iron Alloys—The Microstructure of Slags. **Chemical Composition of the Alloys of Iron.**—Constituents of Iron Alloys—Carbon—Constituents of the Iron Alloys, Carbon—Opinions and Researches on Combined Carbon—Opinions and Researches on Combined Carbon—Applying the Curves of Solution deduced from the Curves of Recalescence to the Determination of the Chemical Composition of the Carbon present in Iron Alloys—The Constituents of Iron—Iron—The Constituents of Iron Alloys—Manganese—Remaining Constituents of Iron Alloys—A Silicon—Gases. **The Chemical Composition of Slag.**—Silicate Slags—Calculating the Composition of Silicate Slags—Phosphate Slags—Oxide Slags—Appendix—Index.



**EVAPORATING, CONDENSING AND COOLING APPARATUS.** Explanations, Formulæ and Tables for Use in Practice. By E. HAUSBRAND, Engineer. Translated by A. C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.). With Twenty-one Illustrations and Seventy-six Tables. 400 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; net.

#### Contents.

ReCoefficient of Transmission of Heat,  $k$ , and the Mean Temperature Difference,  $\theta_m$ —Parallel and Opposite Currents—Apparatus for Heating with Direct Fire—The Injection of Saturated Steam—Superheated Steam—Evaporation by Means of Hot Liquids—The Transference of Heat in General, and Transference by means of Saturated Steam in Particular—The Transference of Heat from Saturated Steam in Pipes (Coils) and Double Bottoms—Evaporation in a Vacuum—The Multiple-effect Evaporator—Multiple-effect Evaporators from which Extra Steam is Taken—The Weight of Water which must be Evaporated from 100 Kilos. of Liquor in order its Original Percentage of Dry Materials from 1-25 per cent. up to 20-70 per cent.—The Relative Proportion of the Heating Surfaces in the Elements of the Multiple Evaporator and their Actual Dimensions—The Pressure Exerted by Currents of Steam and Gas upon Floating Drops of Water—The Motion of Floating Drops of Water upon which Press Currents of Steam—The Splashing of Evaporating Liquids—The Diameter of Pipes for Steam, Alcohol, Vapour and Air—The Diameter of Water Pipes—The Loss of Heat from Apparatus and Pipes to the Surrounding Air, and Means for Preventing the Loss—Condensers—Heating Liquids by Means of Steam—The Cooling of Liquids—The Volumes to be Exhausted from Condensers by the Air-pumps—A Few Remarks on Air-pumps and the Vacua they Produce—The Volumetric Efficiency of Air-pumps—The Volumes of Air which must be Exhausted from a Vessel in order to Reduce its Original Pressure to a Certain Lower Pressure—Index.

## Plumbing, Decorating, Metal Work, etc., etc.

**EXTERNAL PLUMBING WORK.** A Treatise on Lead Work for Roofs. By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. 180 Illustrations. 272 pp. Demy 8vo. Second Edition Revised. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Cast Sheet Lead—Milled Sheet Lead—Roof Cesspools—Socket Pipes—Drips—Gutters—Gutters (continued)—Breaks—Circular Breaks—Flats—Flats (continued)—Rolls on Flats—Roll Ends—Roll Intersections—Seam Rolls—Seam Rolls (continued)—Tack Fixings—Step Flashings—Step Flashings (continued)—Secret Gutters—Soakers—Hip and Valley Soakers—Dormer Windows—Dormer Windows (continued)—Dormer Tops—Internal Dormers—Skylights—Hips and Ridging—Hips and Ridging (continued)—Fixings for Hips and Ridging—Ornamental Ridging—Ornamental Curb Rolls—Curb Rolls—Cornices—Towers and Finials—Towers and Finials (continued)—Towers and Finials (continued)—Domes—Domes (continued)—Ornamental Lead Work—Rain Water Heads—Rain Water Heads (continued)—Rain Water Heads (continued).

**HINTS TO PLUMBERS ON JOINT WIPING, PIPE BENDING AND LEAD BURNING.** Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. 184 Illustrations. 313 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

#### Contents.

Pipe Bending—Pipe Bending (continued)—Pipe Bending (continued)—Square Pipe Bendings—Half-circular Elbows—Curved Bends on Square Pipe—Bossed Bends—Curved Plinth Bends—Rain-water Shoes on Square Pipe—Curved and Angle Bends—Square Pipe Fixings—Joint-wiping—Substitutes for Wiped Joints—Preparing Wiped Joints—Joint Fixings—Plumbing Irons—Joint Fixings—Use of "Touch" in Soldering—Underhand Joints—Blown and Copper Bit Joints—Branch Joints—Branch Joints (continued)—Block Joints—Block Joints (continued)—Block Fixings—Astragal Joints—Pipe Fixings—Large Branch Joints—Large Underhand Joints—Solders—Autogenous Soldering or Lead Burning—Index.

**WORKSHOP WRINKLES** for Decorators, Painters, Paper-hangers and Others. By W. N. BROWN. Crown 8vo. 128 pp. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s. strictly net.

**SANITARY PLUMBING AND DRAINAGE.** By JOHN W. HART. Demy 8vo. With 208 Illustrations. 250 pp. 1904. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Sanitary Surveys—Drain Testing—Drain Testing with Smoke—Testing Drains with Water—Drain Plugs for Testing—Sanitary Defects—Closets—Baths and Lavatories—House Drains—Manholes—Iron Soil Pipes—Lead Soil Pipes—Ventilating Pipes—Water-closets—Flushing Cisterns—Baths—Bath Fittings—Lavatories—Lavatory Fittings—Sinks—Waste Pipes—Water Supply—Ball Valves—Town House Sanitary Arrangements—Drainage—Jointing Pipes—Accessible Drains—Iron Drains—Iron Junctions—Index.

**THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF DIPPING, BURNISHING, LACQUERING AND BRONZING BRASS WARE.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. 35 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 2s.; Abroad, 2s. 6d.; strictly net.

**HOUSE DECORATING AND PAINTING.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. Eighty-eight Illustrations. 150 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 4s.; Other Countries, 4s. 6d.; strictly net.

**A HISTORY OF DECORATIVE ART.** By W. NORMAN BROWN. Thirty-nine Illustrations. 96 pp. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s.; strictly net.

**A HANDBOOK ON JAPANING AND ENAMELLING FOR CYCLES, BEDSTEADS, TINWARE, ETC.** By WILLIAM NORMAN BROWN. 52 pp. and Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 2s.; Abroad, 2s. 6d.; net.

**THE PRINCIPLES OF HOT WATER SUPPLY.** By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. With 129 Illustrations. 177 pp., demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

Water Circulation—The Tank System—Pipes and Joints—The Cylinder System—Boilers for the Cylinder System—The Cylinder System—The Combined Tank and Cylinder System—Combined Independent and Kitchen Boiler—Combined Cylinder and Tank System with Duplicate Boilers—Indirect Heating and Boiler Explosions—Pipe Boilers—Safety Valves—Safety Valves—The American System—Heating Water by Steam—Steam Kettles and Jets—Heating Power of Steam—Covering for Hot Water Pipes—Index.

## Brewing and Botanical.

**HOPS IN THEIR BOTANICAL, AGRICULTURAL AND TECHNICAL ASPECT, AND AS AN ARTICLE OF COMMERCE.** By EMMANUEL GROSS, Professor at the Higher Agricultural College, Tetschen-Liebwerd. Translated from the German. Seventy-eight Illustrations. 340 pp. Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net.

**Contents.**

HISTORY OF THE HOP—THE HOP PLANT—Introductory—The Roots—The Stem—and Leaves—Inflorescence and Flower: Inflorescence and Flower of the Male Hop; Inflorescence and Flower of the Female Hop—The Fruit and its Glandular Structure: The Fruit and Seed—Propagation and Selection of the Hop—Varieties of the Hop: (a) Red Hops; (b) Green Hops; (c) Pale Green Hops—Classification according to the Period of Ripening: Early August Hops: Medium Early Hops; Late Hops—Injuries to Growth—Leaves Turning Yellow, Summer or Sunbrand, Cones Dropping Off, Honey Dew, Damage from Wind, Hail

and Rain; Vegetable Enemies of the Hop: Animal Enemies of the Hop—Beneficial Insects on Hops—**CULTIVATION**—The Requirements of the Hop in Respect of Climate, Soil and Situation: Climate; Soil: Situation—Selection of Variety and Cuttings—Planting a Hop Garden: Drainage; Preparing the Ground; Marking-out for Planting; Planting; Cultivation and Cropping of the Hop Garden in the First Year—Work to be Performed Annually in the Hop Garden: Working the Ground; Cutting; The Non-cutting System; The Proper Performance of the Operation of Cutting: Method of Cutting: Close Cutting, Ordinary Cutting, The Long Cut, The Topping Cut; Proper Season for Cutting: Autumn Cutting, Spring Cutting; Manuring; Training the Hop Plant: Poled Gardens, Frame Training; Principal Types of Frames: Pruning, Cropping, Topping, and Leaf Stripping the Hop Plant; Picking, Drying and Bagging—Principal and Subsidiary Utilisation of Hops and Hop Gardens—Life of a Hop Garden; Subsequent Cropping—Cost of Production, Yield and Selling Prices.

**Preservation and Storage**—Physical and Chemical Structure of the Hop Cone—Judging the Value of Hops.

**Statistics of Production—The Hop Trade—Index.**

## Timber and Wood Waste.

**TIMBER:** A Comprehensive Study of Wood in all its Aspects (Commercial and Botanical), showing the Different Applications and Uses of Timber in Various Trades, etc. Translated from the French of PAUL CHARPENTIER. Royal 8vo. 437 pp. 178 Illustrations. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; net.

### Contents.

**Physical and Chemical Properties of Timber**—Composition of the Vegetable Bodies—Chief Elements—M. Fremy's Researches—Elementary Organs of Plants and especially of Forests—Different Parts of Wood Anatomically and Chemically Considered—General Properties of Wood—**Description of the Different Kinds of Wood**—Principal Essences with Caducous Leaves—Coniferous Resinous Trees—**Division of the Useful Varieties of Timber in the Different Countries of the Globe**—European Timber—African Timber—Asiatic Timber—American Timber—Timber of Oceania—**Forests**—General Notes as to Forests; their Influence—Opinions as to Sylviculture—Improvement of Forests—Unwooding and Rewooding—Preservation of Forests—Exploitation of Forests—Damage caused to Forests—Different Alterations—**The Preservation of Timber**—Generalities—Causes and Progress of Deterioration—History of Different Proposed Processes—Dessication—Superficial Carbonisation of Timber—Processes by Immersion—Generalities as to Antiseptics Employed—Injection Processes in Closed Vessels—The Boucherie System, Based upon the Displacement of the Sap—Processes for Making Timber Uninflammable—**Applications of Timber**—Generalities—Working Timber—Paving—Timber for Mines—Railway Traverses—Accessory Products—Gums—Works of M. Fremy—Resins—Barks—Tan—Application of Cork—The Application of Wood to Art and Dyeing—Different Applications of Wood—Hard Wood—Distillation of Wood—Pyroligneous Acid—Oil of Wood—Distillation of Resins—Index.

**THE UTILISATION OF WOOD WASTE.** Translated from the German of ERNST HUBBARD. Crown 8vo. 192 pp. Fifty Illustrations. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; net.

### Contents.

General Remarks on the Utilisation of Sawdust—Employment of Sawdust as Fuel, with and without Simultaneous Recovery of Charcoal and the Products of Distillation—Manufacture of Oxalic Acid from Sawdust—Process with Soda Lye; Thorn's Process; Bohlig's Process—Manufacture of Spirit (Ethyl Alcohol) from Wood Waste—Patent Dyes (Organic Sulphides, Sulphur Dyes, or Mercapto Dyes)—Artificial Wood and Plastic Compositions from Sawdust—Production of Artificial Wood Compositions for Moulded Decorations—Employment of Sawdust for Blasting Powders and Gunpowders—Employment of Sawdust for Briquettes—Employment of Sawdust in the Ceramic Industry and as an Addition to Mortar—Manufacture of Paper Pulp from Wood—Casks—Various Applications of Sawdust and Wood Refuse—Calcium Carbide—Manure—Wood Mosaic Plaques—Bottle Stoppers—Parquetry—Fire-lighters—Carborundum—The Production of Wood Wool—Bark—Index.



# Building and Architecture.

**THE PREVENTION OF DAMPNES IN BUILDINGS;** with Remarks on the Causes, Nature and Effects of Saline, Efflorescences and Dry-rot, for Architects, Builders, Overseers, Plasterers, Painters and House Owners. By ADOLF WILHELM KEIM. Translated from the German of the second revised Edition by M. J. SALTER, F.I.C., F.C.S. Eight Coloured Plates and Thirteen Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 115 pp. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; net.

## Contents.

The Various Causes of Dampness and Decay of the Masonry of Buildings, and the Structural and Hygienic Evils of the Same—Precautionary Measures during Building against Dampness and Efflorescence—Methods of Remedying Dampness and Efflorescences in the Walls of Old Buildings—The Artificial Drying of New Houses, as well as Old Damp Dwellings, and the Theory of the Hardening of Mortar—New, Certain and Permanently Efficient Methods for Drying Old Damp Walls and Dwellings—The Cause and Origin of Dry-rot: its Injurious Effect on Health, its Destructive Action on Buildings, and its Successful Repression—Methods of Preventing Dry-rot to be Adopted During Construction—Old Methods of Preventing Dry-rot—Recent and More Efficient Remedies for Dry-rot—Index.

**HANDBOOK OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED IN ARCHITECTURE AND BUILDING, AND THEIR ALLIED TRADES AND SUBJECTS.** By AUGUSTINE C. PASSMORE. Demy 8vo. 380 pp. 1904. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net.

# Foods and Sweetmeats.

**THE MANUFACTURE OF PRESERVED FOODS AND SWEETMEATS.** By A. HAUSNER. With Twenty-eight Illustrations. Translated from the German of the third enlarged Edition. Crown 8vo. 225 pp. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; net.

## Contents.

**The Manufacture of Conserves**—Introduction—The Causes of, the Putrefaction of Food—The Chemical Composition of Foods—The Products of Decomposition—The Causes of Fermentation and Putrefaction—Preservative Bodies—The Various Methods of Preserving Food—The Preservation of Animal Food—Preserving Meat by Means of Ice—The Preservation of Meat by Charcoal—Preservation of Meat by Drying—The Preservation of Meat by the Exclusion of Air—The Appert Method—Preserving Flesh by Smoking—Quick Smoking—Preserving Meat with Salt—Quick Salting by Air Pressure—Quick Salting by Liquid Pressure—Gamgee's Method of Preserving Meat—The Preservation of Eggs—Preservation of White and Yolk of Egg—Milk Preservation—Condensed Milk—The Preservation of Fat—Manufacture of Soup Tablets—Meat Biscuits—Extract of Beef—The Preservation of Vegetable Foods in General—Compressing Vegetables—Preservation of Vegetables by Appert's Method—The Preservation of Fruit—Preservation of Fruit by Storage—The Preservation of Fruit by Drying—Drying Fruit by Artificial Heat—Roasting Fruit—The Preservation of Fruit with Sugar—Boiled Preserved Fruit—The Preservation of Fruit in Spirit, Acetic Acid or Glycerine—Preservation of Fruit without Boiling—Jam Manufacture—The Manufacture of Fruit Jellies—The Making of Gelatine Jellies—The Manufacture of "Sulzen"—The Preservation of Fermented Beverages—**The Manufacture of Candies**—Introduction—The Manufacture of Candied Fruit—The Manufacture of Boiled Sugar and Caramel—The Candying of Fruit—Caramelised Fruit—The Manufacture of Sugar Sticks, or Barley Sugar—Bonbon Making—Fruit Drops—The Manufacture of Dragées—The Machinery and Appliances used in Candy Manufacture—Dyeing Candies and Bonbons—Essential Oils used in Candy Making—Fruit Essences—The Manufacture of Filled Bonbons, Liqueur Bonbons and Stamped Lozenges—Recipes for Jams and Jellies—Recipes for Bonbon Making—Dragées—Appendix—Index.



## Dyeing Fancy Goods.

**THE ART OF DYEING AND STAINING MARBLE, ARTIFICIAL STONE, BONE, HORN, IVORY AND WOOD, AND OF IMITATING ALL SORTS OF WOOD.** A Practical Handbook for the Use of Joiners, Turners, Manufacturers of Fancy Goods, Stick and Umbrella Makers, Comb Makers, etc. Translated from the German of D. H. SOXHLET, Technical Chemist. Crown 8vo. 168 pp. Price 5s.; India and Colonies 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; net.

### Contents.

Mordants and Stains—Natural Dyes—Artificial Pigments—Coal Tar Dyes—Staining Marble and Artificial Stone—Dyeing, Bleaching and Imitation of Bone, Horn and Ivory—Imitation of Tortoiseshell for Combs: Yellows, Dyeing Nuts—Ivory—Wood Dyeing—Imitation of Mahogany: Dark Walnut, Oak, Birch-Bark, Elder-Marquetry, Walnut, Walnut-Marquetry, Mahogany, Spanish Mahogany, Palisander and Rose Wood, Tortoiseshell, Oak, Ebony, Pear Tree—Black Dyeing Processes with Penetrating Colours—Varnishes and Polishes: English Furniture Polish, Vienna Furniture Polish, Amber Varnish, Copal Varnish, Composition for Preserving Furniture—Index.

## Lithography, Printing and Engraving.

**PRACTICAL LITHOGRAPHY.** By ALFRED SEYMOUR. Demy 8vo. With Frontispiece and 33 Illus. 120 pp. Price 5s.; Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; net.

### Contents.

Stones—Transfer Inks—Transfer Papers—Transfer Printing—Litho Press—Press Work—Machine Printing—Colour Printing—Substitutes for Lithographic Stones—Tin Plate Printing and Decoration—Photo-Lithography.

**PRINTERS' AND STATIONERS' READY RECKONER AND COMPENDIUM.** Compiled by VICTOR GRAHAM. Crown 8vo. 112 pp. 1904. Price 3s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 4s.; Other Countries, 4s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

### Contents.

Price of Paper per Sheet, Quire, Ream and Lb.—Cost of 100 to 1000 Sheets at various Sizes and Prices per Ream—Cost of Cards—Quantity Table—Sizes and Weights of Paper, Cards, etc.—Notes on Account Books—Discount Tables—Sizes of spaces—Leads to a lb.—Dictionary—Measure for Bookwork—Correcting Proofs, etc.

**ENGRAVING FOR ILLUSTRATION. HISTORICAL AND PRACTICAL NOTES.** By J. KIRKBRIDE. 72 pp. Two Plates and 6 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s.; strictly net.

### Contents.

Its Inception—Wood Engraving—Metal Engraving—Engraving in England—Etching—Mezzotint—Photo-Process Engraving—The Engraver's Task—Appreciative Criticism—Index.

## Bookbinding.

**PRACTICAL BOOKBINDING.** By PAUL ADAM. Translated from the German. Crown 8vo. 180 pp. 127 Illustrations. Price 5s.; Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; net.

### Contents.

Materials for Sewing and Pasting—Materials for Covering the Book—Materials for Decorating and Finishing—Tools—General Preparatory Work—Sewing—Forwarding, Cutting, Rounding and Backing—Forwarding, Decoration of Edges and Headbanding—Boarding—Preparing the Cover—Work with the Blocking Press—Treatment of Sewn Books, Fastening in Covers, and Finishing Off—Handtooling and Other Decoration—Account Books—School Books, Mounting Maps, Drawings, etc.—Index.

# Sugar Refining.

**THE TECHNOLOGY OF SUGAR:** Practical Treatise on the Modern Methods of Manufacture of Sugar from the Sugar Cane and Sugar Beet. By JOHN GEDDES McINTOSH. Second Revised and Enlarged Edition. Demy 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 436 pp. Seventy-six Tables. 1906. Price 10s. 6d.; Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; net.  
(See "Evaporating, Condensing, etc., Apparatus," p. 27.)

## Contents.

Chemistry of Sucrose, Lactose, Maltose, Glucose, Invert Sugar, etc.—Purchase and Analysis of Beets—Treatment of Beets—Diffusion—Filtration—Concentration—Evaporation—**Sugar Cane:** Cultivation—Milling—Diffusion—Sugar Refining—Analysis of Raw Sugars—Chemistry of Molasses, etc.

# Bibliography.

**CLASSIFIED GUIDE TO TECHNICAL AND COMMERCIAL BOOKS.** Compiled by EDGAR GREENWOOD.

Demy 8vo. 224 pp. 1904. Being a Subject-list of the Principal British and American Books in print; giving Title, Author, Size, Date, Publisher and Price. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

## Contents.

1. Agriculture and Farming—Agricultural Chemistry—Bee-keeping—Cattle, Pigs, Sheep—Dairy and Dairy Work—Feeding Animals—Forestry—Fruit Growing—Irrigation—Manures—Poultry Farming. 2. Air, Aerial Navigation. 3. Architecture and Building. 4. Art—Lettering—Modelling—Ornament—Painting—Perspective. 5. Arts and Crafts, Amateur Work. 6. Auction Sales. 7. Banking. 8. Book and Newspaper Production, Paper-making, Printing—Bookbinding—Bookselling—Copyright—Journalism—Lithography—Paper-making—Printing, Typography—Process Work—Stationery. 9. Brewing and Distilling. 10. Cabinet-making. 11. Calculators, Ready Reckoners, Discount Tables. 12. Carpentry and Joinery. 13. Chemicals, Chemistry. 14. Coachbuilding. 15. Commerce, Business. 16. Dams, Docks, Harbours. 17. Dogs. 18. Domestic Economy—Cookery—Dressmaking—Laundry—Millinery. 19. Electricity—Alternating Currents—Dynamoes—Electric Heating—Electric Lighting—Electric Traction—Telegraphy—Telephones—Wireless Telegraphy. 20. Elocution, Voice Production. 21. Engineering and Metal Work—Architectural Engineering—Blacksmithing—Boilers—Bridges—Civil Engineering—Fuel, Smoke—Galvanising, Tinning—Gas, Oil and Air Engines—Hardware—Hydraulic Engineering—Indicators—Injectors—Iron and Steel—Ironfoundry—Lathes, Tools—Locomotives—Machine Construction and Design—Marine Engineering—Mechanical Engineering—Metal Work—Pattern Making—Pipes—Power Transmission—Pumps—Refrigeration—Saw Filing—Screw Cutting—Steam Engine—Strains and Stresses—Turbines. 22. Factories and Workshops. 23. Financial—Investments—Stockbroking. 24. Foods and Beverages—Adulteration and Analysis—Bread—Cakes—Fish—Flour, Grain—Food and Drug Acts—Tea. 25. Foreign Exchange Tables, Metric System. 26. Foreign Languages. 27. Gardening, Flowers. 28. Gas—Acetylene—Gas Fitting—Gas Lighting and Supply. 29. Glass. 30. Glues, Inks, Pastes. 31. Horses. 32. Hospitals, Nursing. 33. House Decoration. 34. Hygiene, Public Health—Bacteriology—Hygiene—Public Health—Sanitary Inspection—Sewage and Sewerage. 35. India—Rubber. 36. Insurance. 37. Jewellery, Silver and Goldsmith's Work. 38. Land, Property. 39. Leather Trades. 40. Legal—Arbitration—Bankruptcy Law—Commercial Law—Contract Law—Solicitors—Stamp Duties—Trustee Law—Wills. 41. Metallurgy. 42. Military. 43. Mining, Quarrying. 44. Motor Cars and Cycles. 45. Music. 46. Nautical, Navigation. 46a. Navy. 47. Oils, Fats. 48. Optical, Microscopy, Instruments. 49. Paints, Colours, Varnishes. 50. Patents, Trade Marks. 51. Photography. 52. Physics. 53. Physical Training. 54. Plumbing, Heating, Ventilation. 55. Pottery, China, Bricks. 56. Public Meetings, Elections, Taxes. 57. Railways and Tramways—Construction of Railways—Carriage and Wagon Building—Law of Railways—Light Railways—Management. 58. Rivers, Canals. 59. Roads, Highways. 60. Shopkeeping, Ticket Writing. 61. Shorthand, Typewriting. 62. Soaps, Candles. 63. Building, Co-operative and Friendly Societies. 64. Surveying. 65. Teaching, Education. 66. Telegraph Codes. 67. Textile Trades. 68. Timber. 69. Veterinary. 70. Watches, Clocks. 71. Water. Subject Index.

SCOTT, GREENWOOD & Co. will forward these Books, *post free*, upon receipt of remittance at the published price, or they can be obtained through all Booksellers.

Full List of Contents of any of the books will be sent on application.

**SCOTT, GREENWOOD & SON,**  
Technical Book Publishers,  
19 LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

fixa  
also nely



THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE  
STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS  
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN  
THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY  
WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH  
DAY AND TO \$1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY  
OVERDUE.

NOV 22 1932

MAY 24 1943

LIBRARY USE

JUN 25 1960

REC'D LD

JUN 25 1960

1900-1964TC

REC'D LD

OCT 5 '64-11 AM

5



YC 94476

TP986  
C2S3

153171

